

## Contents

<b>Introduction</b>	<b>1</b>
<b>Normed Vector Spaces</b>	<b>1</b>
Vector Spaces, Norms, and Basic Properties . . . . .	1
Examples . . . . .	2
Series Convergence and Completeness . . . . .	3
Quotient Spaces . . . . .	4
Bounded Linear Operators . . . . .	7
Quotient Maps . . . . .	11
<b>Pillars of Functional Analysis</b>	<b>15</b>
Baire Category Theorem . . . . .	15
Open Mapping Theorem . . . . .	17
Complemented Subspaces and Direct Sums . . . . .	19
Closed Graph Theorem . . . . .	20
Uniform Boundedness Principle . . . . .	23
Hahn–Banach Theorems . . . . .	26
<b>Duality</b>	<b>34</b>
Completions and the Double Dual . . . . .	34
Dual Spaces . . . . .	38
The Banach Space Adjoint . . . . .	55
Properties of Reflexive Spaces . . . . .	61
Tensor Products in Vector Spaces . . . . .	62
Tensor Products of Banach Spaces . . . . .	64
Injective Tensor Product . . . . .	64
Projective Tensor Product . . . . .	68
Finite-Rank and Compact Operators . . . . .	71
<b>Locally Convex Topological Vector Spaces</b>	<b>80</b>
Topological Vector Spaces . . . . .	80
Local Convexity . . . . .	86
Structure of Locally Convex Topological Vector Spaces . . . . .	87

## Introduction

This is going to be part of the notes for my Honors thesis independent study, which will be focused on amenability and  $C^*$ -algebras. This section of notes will be focused on the essential results in functional analysis, starting from normed vector spaces, working our way up through locally convex topological vector spaces and the Krein–Milman theorem.

The primary source for this section is going to be Timothy Rainone’s *Functional Analysis-En Route to Operator Algebras*, which has not been published yet.

I do not claim any of this work to be original.

## Normed Vector Spaces

### Vector Spaces, Norms, and Basic Properties

All vector spaces are defined over  $\mathbb{C}$ . Most of the information here is in my Real Analysis II notes, so I’m going to skip to some of the more important content.

**Definition (Vector Space).** A vector space  $V$  is a set closed under two operations

$$\begin{aligned} \alpha : V \times V &\rightarrow V, (v_1, v_2) \mapsto v_1 + v_2 \\ m : \mathbb{C} \times V &\rightarrow V, (\lambda, v) \mapsto \lambda v. \end{aligned}$$

We refer to  $\alpha$  as addition, and  $m$  as scalar multiplication;  $(V, +)$  is an abelian ring.

**Definition (Norm).** A norm is a function

$$\|\cdot\| : V \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^+, x \mapsto \|x\|$$

that satisfies the following properties:

- Positive definiteness:  $\|v\| = 0$  if and only if  $v = 0_V$ .
- Triangle inequality:  $\|v + w\| \leq \|v\| + \|w\|$ .
- Absolute Homogeneity:  $\|\lambda v\| = |\lambda| \|v\|$ , for  $\lambda \in \mathbb{C}$ .

If a function  $p : V \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^+$  satisfies the triangle inequality and absolute homogeneity, we say  $p$  is a semi-norm.

We say the pair  $(V, \|\cdot\|)$  is a normed vector space.

**Definition (Balls and Spheres).** Let  $X$  be a normed vector space,  $x \in X$ , and  $\delta > 0$ . Then,

$$\begin{aligned} U(x, \delta) &= \{y \in X \mid d(x, y) < \delta\} \\ B(x, \delta) &= \{y \in X \mid d(x, y) \leq \delta\} \\ S(x, \delta) &= \{y \in X \mid d(x, y) = \delta\}. \end{aligned}$$

For a normed vector space, we will use the following conventions for common sets:

$$\begin{aligned} U_X &= U(0, 1) \\ B_X &= B(0, 1) \\ S_X &= S(0, 1) \\ \mathbb{D} &= U_{\mathbb{C}} \\ \mathbb{T} &= S_{\mathbb{C}}. \end{aligned}$$

**Definition (Equivalent Norms).** Two norms on  $V$ ,  $\|\cdot\|_a$  and  $\|\cdot\|_b$  are said to be equivalent if there are two constants  $C_1$  and  $C_2$  such that

$$\begin{aligned} \|v\|_a &\leq C_1 \|v\|_b \\ \|v\|_b &\leq C_2 \|v\|_a \end{aligned}$$

for all  $v \in V$ . We say  $\|\cdot\|_a \sim \|\cdot\|_b$ .

## Examples

**Example (Finite-Dimensional Vector Spaces).** The vector space  $\mathbb{C}^n$  with the  $p$ -norm is denoted  $\ell_p^n$ , where for  $p \in [1, \infty]$ , the  $p$ -norm is defined by

$$\|x\|_p = \left( \sum_{i=1}^n |x_i|^p \right)^{1/p}.$$

In the case with  $p = 2$ , this gives the traditional Euclidean norm, and with  $p = \infty$ , this gives the sup norm:

$$\|x\|_{\infty} = \max_{1 \leq i \leq n} |x_i|.$$

**Example (A Sequence Space).** We let  $\ell_p = \{(x_n)_n \mid x_n \in \mathbb{C}, \|x\|_p < \infty\}$  be the collection of sequences in  $\mathbb{C}$  with finite  $p$ -norm. Here,

$$\|x\|_p = \left( \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} |x_n|^p \right)^{1/p}.$$

In the case with  $p = \infty$ , this gives the sequence space  $\ell_{\infty}$ , which has norm

$$\|x\|_{\infty} = \sup_{n \in \mathbb{N}} |x_n|.$$

**Example (A Function Space).** We let  $\ell^{\infty}(\Omega)$  denote the set of all bounded functions  $f : \Omega \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$ , equipped with the norm

$$\|f\|_{\infty} = \sup_{x \in \Omega} |f(x)|.$$

If  $\Omega = (\Omega, \mathcal{M}, \mu)$  is a measure space, then we let  $L^{\infty}(\Omega)$  be the space of  $\mu$ -a.e. equal essentially bounded measurable functions, under the norm

$$\|f\|_{\infty} = \text{ess sup}_{x \in \Omega} |f(x)|.$$

## Series Convergence and Completeness

**Proposition (Criteria for Banach Spaces):** Let  $X$  be a normed vector space. The following are equivalent:

- (i)  $X$  is a Banach space.<sup>1</sup>
- (ii) If  $(x_k)_k$  is a sequence of vectors such that  $\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \|x_k\|$  converges, then  $\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} x_k$  converges.
- (iii) If  $(x_k)_k$  is a sequence in  $X$  such that  $\|x_k\| < 2^{-k}$ , then  $\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} x_k$  converges.

*Proof.* To show (i) implies (ii), for  $n > m > N$ , we have

$$\begin{aligned} \|s_n - s_m\| &= \left\| \sum_{k=m+1}^n x_k \right\| \\ &\leq \sum_{k=m+1}^n \|x_k\| \\ &< \epsilon, \end{aligned}$$

implying that  $s_n$  is Cauchy, and thus converges since  $X$  is complete.

Since  $\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} 2^{-k}$  converges, it is clear that (ii) implies (iii).

To show (iii) implies (i), we let  $(x_n)_n$  be a Cauchy sequence in  $X$ . We only need construct a convergent subsequence in order to show that  $(x_n)_n$  converges.

Chose  $n_1 \in \mathbb{N}$  such that for  $n, m \geq n_1$ ,  $\|x_m - x_n\| < \frac{1}{2^2}$ , and inductively define  $n_j > n_{j-1}$  such that  $n, m \geq n_j$  implies  $\|x_m - x_n\| < \frac{1}{2^{j+1}}$ .

Let  $y_1 = x_{n_1}$ ,  $y_j = x_{n_j} - x_{n_{j-1}}$ . Then,

$$\begin{aligned} \|y_j\| &= \|x_{n_j} - x_{n_{j-1}}\| \\ &< \frac{1}{2^j}, \end{aligned}$$

so  $\sum_{j=1}^{\infty} y_j$  converges by our assumption. By telescoping, we see that  $\sum_{j=1}^k y_j = x_{n_k}$ , so  $(x_{n_k})_k$  converges. □

---

<sup>1</sup>Complete normed vector space.

## Quotient Spaces

Let  $X$  be a normed vector space. Then, for  $E \subseteq X$  a subspace, there is a quotient space  $X/E$  with the projection map  $\pi : X \rightarrow X/E$ ,  $x \mapsto x + E$ . We want to make  $X/E$  into a normed space — in order to do this, we use the distance function:

$$\text{dist}_E(x) = \inf_{y \in E} d(x, y),$$

which is uniformly continuous. For  $E$  closed, then  $\text{dist}_E(x) = 0$  if and only if  $x \in E$ .

**Proposition (Quotient Space Norm):** Let  $X$  be a normed vector space, and  $E \subseteq X$  a subspace. Set

$$\|x + E\|_{X/E} = \text{dist}_E(x).$$

Then,

- (1)  $\|\cdot\|_{X/E}$  is a well-defined seminorm on  $X/E$ .
- (2) If  $E$  is closed, then  $\|\cdot\|_{X/E}$  is a norm on  $X/E$ .
- (3)  $\|x + E\|_{X/E} \leq \|x\|$  for all  $x \in X$ .
- (4) If  $E$  is closed, then  $\pi : X \rightarrow X/E$  is Lipschitz.
- (5) If  $X$  is a Banach space and  $E$  is closed, then  $X/E$  is also a Banach space.

*Proof.*

- (1) We will show that  $\|\cdot\|_{X/E}$  is well-defined. If  $x + E = x' + E$ ,  $x' - x \in E$ , so for every  $y \in E$ ,  $x' - x + y \in E$ . Thus,

$$\begin{aligned} \|x - y\| &= \|x' - (x' - x + y)\| \\ &\geq \inf_{z \in E} \|x' - z\| \\ &= \|x' + E\|_{X/E}. \end{aligned}$$

Thus,  $\|x + E\|_{X/E} \geq \|x' + E\|_{X/E}$ , and vice versa.

Let  $\lambda \in \mathbb{C} \setminus \{0\}$ , and  $x \in X$ . Then,

$$\begin{aligned} \|\lambda(x + E)\|_{X/E} &= \|\lambda x + E\|_{X/E} \\ &= \inf_{y \in E} \|\lambda x - y\| \\ &= |\lambda| \inf_{y \in E} \|x - \lambda^{-1}y\| \\ &= |\lambda| \inf_{y' \in E} \|x - y'\| \\ &= |\lambda| \|x + E\|_{X/E} \end{aligned}$$

Given  $x, x' \in X$  and a fixed  $\varepsilon > 0$ , we have

$$\|x + E\| + \frac{\varepsilon}{2} > \|x - y\|$$

for some  $y \in E$ , and

$$\|x' + E\| + \frac{\varepsilon}{2} > \|x' - y'\|$$

for some  $y' \in E$ . Thus,

$$\|(x + x') - (y + y')\| \leq \|x - y\| + \|x' - y'\|$$

$$< \varepsilon + \|x + E\| + \|x' + E\|.$$

Since  $y + y' \in E$ , we have

$$\begin{aligned} \|(x + E) + (x' + E)\|_{X/E} &= \|x + x' + E\|_{X/E} \\ &\leq \|(x + x') - (y + y')\| \\ &< \varepsilon + \|x + E\|_{X/E} + \|x' + E\|_{X/E}, \end{aligned}$$

meaning

$$\|(x + E) + (x' + E)\| \leq \|x + E\| + \|x' + E\|.$$

(2) If  $E$  is closed, and  $\|x + E\| = 0$ , then  $x \in E$  so  $x + E = 0_{X/E}$ .

(3) For  $x \in X$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} \|x + E\|_{X/E} &= \inf_{y \in E} \|x - y\| \\ &\leq \|x\|. \end{aligned}$$

(4) We have

$$\begin{aligned} \|(x + E) - (x' + E)\|_{X/E} &= \|x - x' + E\|_{X/E} \\ &\leq \|x - x'\|. \end{aligned}$$

(5) Let  $X$  be complete and  $E \subseteq X$  be closed. Let  $(x_k + E)_k$  be a sequence in  $X/E$  with  $\|x_k + E\| < 2^{-k}$ . We want to show that  $\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} (x_k + E)$  converges.

For each  $k$ , since  $\|x_k + E\| < 2^{-k}$ , there exists  $y_k \in E$  such that  $\|x_k - y_k\| < 2^{-k}$ . Since  $X$  is complete,  $\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} x_k - y_k$  converges.

Let  $(\sum_{k=1}^n x_k - y_k)_n \rightarrow x$  in  $X$ . Applying the canonical projection map,  $\pi$ , to both sides, we get

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{k=1}^n (x_k + E) &= \sum_{k=1}^n \pi(x_k) \\ &= \pi\left(\sum_{k=1}^n (x_k - y_k)\right) \\ &\rightarrow \pi(x), \end{aligned}$$

implying that  $\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} (x_k + E)$  converges.

□

**Exercise:** Consider  $\ell_{\infty}$  and its closed subspace  $c_0$ . If  $\pi : \ell_{\infty} \rightarrow \ell_{\infty}/c_0$  denotes the canonical quotient map, with  $(z_k)_k \in \ell_{\infty}$ , show that

$$\|(z_k)_k + c_0\| = \limsup_{k \rightarrow \infty} |z_k|$$

**Solution:** Let  $z = (z_k)_k \in \ell_{\infty}$ . We define the distance

$$\text{dist}_{c_0}(z) = \inf_{t \in c_0} |z_k - t_k|.$$

Let  $w \in c_c$  be defined by

$$w = (z_1, z_2, \dots, z_{n-1}, 0, 0, \dots).$$

Then,

$$\begin{aligned}\|z - w\|_\infty &= \sup_{k \in \mathbb{N}} |z_k - w_k| \\ &= \sup_{k \geq n} |z_k - w_k|,\end{aligned}$$

meaning that

$$\text{dist}_{c_c}(z) \leq \sup_{k \geq n} |z_k|.$$

Since  $c_0 \supseteq c_c$ , we have

$$\begin{aligned}\text{dist}_{c_0}(z) &\leq \text{dist}_{c_c}(z) \\ &\leq \inf_{n \geq 1} \left( \sup_{k \geq n} |z_k| \right) \\ &= \limsup_{k \rightarrow \infty} |z_k|.\end{aligned}$$

Now, we show that  $\limsup_{k \rightarrow \infty} |z_k| \leq \text{dist}_{c_c}(z)$ . Given  $\varepsilon > 0$ , there exists  $w \in c_c$  such that

$$\|z - w\| < \text{dist}_{c_c}(z) + \varepsilon.$$

Additionally, for  $w$  that terminates at  $n - 1$  (i.e., is equal to 0 for all  $k \geq n$ ), we have

$$\sup_{k \geq n} |z_k - w_k| \leq \sup_{k \in \mathbb{N}} |z_k - w_k|,$$

meaning

$$\begin{aligned}\limsup_{k \rightarrow \infty} |z_k| &= \inf_{n \geq 1} \left( \sup_{k \geq n} |z_k| \right) \\ &\leq \sup_{k \geq n} |z_k - w_k| \\ &\leq \sup_{k \in \mathbb{N}} |z_k - w_k| \\ &= \|z - w\| \\ &< \text{dist}_{c_c}(z) + \varepsilon,\end{aligned}$$

implying that

$$\limsup_{k \rightarrow \infty} |z_k| = \text{dist}_{c_c}(z).$$

For  $\varepsilon > 0$ , let  $w \in c_0$  be such that

$$\|z - w\| < \text{dist}_{c_0}(z) + \varepsilon/2.$$

Additionally, let  $\lambda \in c_c$  such that  $\|\lambda - w\| < \varepsilon/2$ . Then, we have

$$\begin{aligned}\text{dist}_{c_0}(z) + \varepsilon &> \|z - \lambda\| + \|\lambda - w\| \\ &\geq \text{dist}_{c_c}(z) + \varepsilon/2 \\ &\geq \limsup_{k \rightarrow \infty} |z_k|.\end{aligned}$$

Thus,  $\limsup_{k \rightarrow \infty} |z_k| \leq \text{dist}_{c_0}(z)$ , meaning  $\limsup_{k \rightarrow \infty} |z_k| = \text{dist}_{c_0}(z)$ .

## Bounded Linear Operators

**Definition** (Continuous Functions). A function  $f : (X, d_X) \rightarrow (Y, d_Y)$  is called Lipschitz if there is a constant  $C > 0$  such that

$$d_Y(f(x), f(x')) \leq C d_X(x, x')$$

for all  $x, x' \in X$ .

If  $C \leq 1$ , a Lipschitz map is known as a contraction.

If

$$d_Y(f(x), f(x')) = d_X(x, x')$$

for all  $x, x' \in X$ , then  $f$  is known as an isometry.

**Proposition** (Categorization of Continuous Linear Maps): Let  $X$  and  $Y$  be normed vector spaces, and let  $T : X \rightarrow Y$  be a linear map. The following are equivalent:

- (i)  $T$  is continuous at 0.
- (ii)  $T$  is continuous.
- (iii)  $T$  is uniformly continuous.
- (iv)  $T$  is Lipschitz.
- (v) There exists a constant  $C > 0$  such that  $\|T(x)\| \leq C \|x\|$  for all  $x \in X$ .

**Definition** (Bounded Linear Operator). Let  $X$  and  $Y$  be normed vector spaces, and let  $T : X \rightarrow Y$  be a linear map.

- (1)  $T$  is bounded if  $T(B_X)$  is bounded in  $Y$ . Equivalently,  $T$  is bounded if and only if

$$\sup_{x \in B_X} \|T(x)\| < \infty,$$

or that  $\exists r > 0$  such that  $T(B_X) \subseteq B_Y(0, r)$ .

- (2) The operator norm of  $T$  is the value

$$\|T\|_{\text{op}} = \sup_{x \in B_X} \|T(x)\|.$$

**Lemma:** Let  $T : X \rightarrow Y$  be a linear map between normed vector spaces. Then,

$$\|T\|_{\text{op}} = \sup_{x \in S_X} \|T(x)\|$$

and for all  $x \in X$ ,

$$\|T(x)\| \leq \|T\|_{\text{op}} \|x\|.$$

**Lemma:** Let  $T : X \rightarrow Y$  be a bounded linear map between normed vector spaces. Then, for any  $x \in X$  and  $r > 0$ ,

$$r \|T\|_{\text{op}} \leq \sup_{y \in B(x, r)} \|T(y)\|$$

*Proof.* Let  $C = \sup_{y \in B(x, r)} \|T(y)\|$ . If  $z \in B(0, r)$ , then  $z + x, z - x \in B(x, r)$ , meaning

$$2T(z) = T(z + x) + T(z - x),$$

so by the triangle inequality, we get

$$\begin{aligned} 2\|T(z)\| &\leq \|T(z + x)\| + \|T(z - x)\| \\ &\leq 2 \max \{\|T(z + x)\|, \|T(z - x)\|\} \\ &\leq 2C. \end{aligned}$$

Thus,

$$\|T(z)\| \leq \sup_{y \in B(x, r)} \|T(y)\|,$$

meaning

$$r\|T\|_{\text{op}} \leq \sup_{y \in B(x, r)} \|T(y)\|.$$

□

**Remark:** For a linear map  $T : X \rightarrow Y$ , the following are equivalent:

- (1)  $T$  is continuous.
- (2)  $T$  is bounded.
- (3)  $\|T\|_{\text{op}} < \infty$ .

**Definition.** Let  $X$  and  $Y$  be normed spaces,  $T : X \rightarrow Y$  a linear map.

- (1)  $T$  is bounded below if there exists  $C_2$  such that  $\|T(x)\| \geq C_2 \|x\|$  for all  $x \in X$ .
- (2)  $T$  is bicontinuous if  $T$  is bounded and bounded below.

$$C_2 \|x\| \leq \|T(x)\| \leq C_1 \|x\|$$

- (3)  $T$  is a bicontinuous isomorphism if  $T$  is bijective, linear, and bicontinuous. We say  $X$  and  $Y$  are bicontinuously isomorphic.
- (4) We say  $T$  is an isometric isomorphism if  $T$  is bijective, linear, and an isometry.

**Example.** Let  $\rho$  be the continuous surjective wrapping function  $\rho : [0, 2\pi] \rightarrow \mathbb{T}$ ,  $\rho(t) = e^{it}$ . There is an induced isometry

$$T_\rho : C(\mathbb{T}) \rightarrow C([0, 2\pi]),$$

defined by  $T_\rho(f)(t) = f \circ \rho(t) = f(e^{it})$ .

The range of  $T_\rho$  is  $C = \{g \in C([0, 2\pi]) \mid g(0) = g(2\pi)\}$ , which means that  $C(\mathbb{T})$  and  $C$  are isometrically isomorphic Banach spaces.

**Proposition:** Let  $X$  and  $Y$  be normed spaces, and  $T : X \rightarrow Y$  be a linear map. The following are equivalent.

- (i)  $T$  is bicontinuous.
- (ii)  $T : X \rightarrow \text{Ran}(T)$  is a linear isomorphism and homeomorphism.



*Proof.* Let  $T$  be bicontinuous. Then,  $T$  is linear, injective, and surjective onto  $\text{Ran}(T)$ . Since  $T$  is continuous,  $T$  is bounded. Let  $S : \text{Ran}(T) \rightarrow X$  be defined by  $S(T(x)) = x$ . We can see that  $S$  is well-defined, since  $T : X \rightarrow \text{Ran}(T)$  is surjective, and so has a left inverse. Similarly, since  $\|S(T(x))\| = \|x\| \leq \frac{1}{C_2} \|T(x)\|$ ,  $S$  is continuous.

Let  $S : \text{Ran}(T) \rightarrow X$  be defined by  $S(T(x)) = x$ . Since  $T$  is continuous, it is bounded, so

$$\|T(x)\| \leq \|T\|_{\text{op}} \|x\|.$$

Since  $S$  is bounded,

$$\begin{aligned} \|x\| &= \|S(T(x))\| \\ &= \|S\|_{\text{op}} \|T(x)\|, \end{aligned}$$

$$\text{so } \frac{1}{\|S\|_{\text{op}}} \|x\| \leq \|T(x)\|.$$

□

**Corollary:** Let  $X$  be a vector space with  $\|\cdot\|$  and  $\|\cdot\|'$  two norms. The following are equivalent:

- (i) The norms  $\|\cdot\|$  and  $\|\cdot\|'$  are equivalent.
- (ii) The map  $\text{id}_X : (X, \|\cdot\|) \rightarrow (X, \|\cdot\|')$ .

**Proposition** (Properties of Bounded Linear Operators): Let  $X, Y, Z$  be normed spaces,  $T : X \rightarrow Y$ ,  $S : X \rightarrow Y$ , and  $R : Y \rightarrow Z$  be linear maps.

- (1)  $\|\alpha T\|_{\text{op}} = |\alpha| \|T\|_{\text{op}}$
- (2)  $\|T + S\|_{\text{op}} \leq \|T\|_{\text{op}} + \|S\|_{\text{op}}$
- (3)  $\|T\|_{\text{op}} = 0$  if and only if  $T = 0$
- (4)  $\|R \circ T\|_{\text{op}} \leq \|R\|_{\text{op}} \|T\|_{\text{op}}$
- (5)  $\|\text{id}_X\|_{\text{op}} = 1$
- (6) If  $E \subseteq X$  is a subspace, then  $\|T|_E\|_{\text{op}} \leq \|T\|_{\text{op}}$

*Proof.* We will prove (4) here. For  $x \in B_X$ , we have

$$\begin{aligned} \|R \circ T(x)\| &= \|R(T(x))\| \\ &\leq \|R\|_{\text{op}} \|T(x)\| \\ &\leq \|R\|_{\text{op}} \|T\|_{\text{op}}. \end{aligned}$$

Taking the supremum, we obtain  $\|R \circ T\|_{\text{op}} \leq \|R\|_{\text{op}} \|T\|_{\text{op}}$ .

□

**Recall:**  $\mathcal{L}(X, Y)$  is the set of all linear operators with domain  $X$  and codomain  $Y$ .

**Proposition:** Let  $X$  and  $Y$  be normed spaces.

- (1) The collection  $\mathcal{B}(X, Y) = \{T \in \mathcal{L}(X, Y) \mid \|T\|_{\text{op}} < \infty\}$  equipped with the operator norm is a normed space known as the space of bounded linear operators between  $X$  and  $Y$ .
- (2) If  $Y$  is a Banach space, then  $\mathcal{B}(X, Y)$  is a Banach space.
- (3) The continuous dual space,  $X^* = \mathcal{B}(X, \mathbb{C})$  is a Banach space.

*Proof.* We will prove (2). Let  $(T_n)_n$  be Cauchy under  $\|\cdot\|_{\text{op}}$ . Since Cauchy sequences are bounded, there is some  $C > 0$  such that  $\|T_n\|_{\text{op}} \leq C$  for all  $n \geq 1$ . For  $x \in X$ ,

$$\|T_n(x) - T_m(x)\| \leq \|T_n - T_m\|_{\text{op}} \|x\|,$$

meaning  $(T_n(x))_n$  is Cauchy in  $Y$ . Since  $Y$  is complete, we define

$$T(x) = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} T_n(x)$$

in  $Y$ . If  $x \in B_X$ , we have

$$\begin{aligned} \|T(x)\| &= \left\| \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} T_n(x) \right\| \\ &= \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \|T_n(x)\| \\ &\leq \limsup_{n \rightarrow \infty} \|T_n(x)\| \\ &\leq C \|x\|, \end{aligned}$$

meaning  $\|T\|_{\text{op}} \leq C$ .

Let  $\varepsilon > 0$ , and  $N \in \mathbb{N}$  large such that  $n, m \geq N$ ,  $\|T_n - T_m\|_{\text{op}} \leq \varepsilon$ . For  $x \in B_X$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} \|T_n(x) - T(x)\| &= \lim_{m \rightarrow \infty} \|T_n(x) - T_m(x)\| \\ &\leq \limsup_{m \rightarrow \infty} \|T_n - T_m\|_{\text{op}} \|x\| \\ &< \varepsilon. \end{aligned}$$

Thus,  $\|T - T_n\|_{\text{op}} < \varepsilon$  for all  $n \geq N$ . □

**Definition** (Algebras). Let  $A$  be an algebra over  $\mathbb{C}$ .

- (1) If  $A$  admits a norm  $\|\cdot\|$  satisfying  $\|ab\| \leq \|a\| \|b\|$ , then  $A$  is a normed algebra. If  $A$  is unital, then  $\|1_A\| = 1$ .
- (2) If  $A$  is complete with respect to its norm, then  $A$  is called a Banach algebra, and if  $A$  is unital, then  $A$  is a unital Banach algebra.

**Lemma:** In a normed algebra  $A$ , the map  $\cdot : A \times A \rightarrow A, (a, b) \mapsto ab$  is continuous.

**Proposition:** Let  $X$  be a normed space. The set of bounded operators  $\mathcal{B}(X, X) = \mathcal{B}(X)$  is a unital normed algebra. Moreover, if  $X$  is a Banach space, then  $\mathcal{B}(X)$  is a Banach algebra.

**Proposition:** Let  $A$  be a unital Banach algebra,  $a \in A$ . The series

$$\exp(a) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{a^n}{n!}$$

converges absolutely in  $A$ . We call  $\exp(a)$  the exponential of  $a$ .

- (1)  $\exp(0) = 1_A$
- (2) If  $A$  is commutative, then  $\exp(a + b) = \exp(a)\exp(b)$ .
- (3) We have  $\exp(a) \in GL(A)$  with  $\exp(a)^{-1} = \exp(-a)$ .
- (4)  $\|\exp(a)\| \leq \exp(\|a\|)$ .

## Quotient Maps

**Definition.** A map  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  is called open if  $U \subseteq X$  is open implies  $f(U) \subseteq Y$  is open.

**Proposition:** Let  $X$  and  $Y$  be normed spaces,  $T : X \rightarrow Y$  a linear map. The following are equivalent:

- (i)  $T$  is surjective and open.
- (ii)  $T(U_X) \subseteq Y$  is open.
- (iii) There exists  $\delta > 0$  such that  $\delta U_Y \subseteq T(U_X)$ .
- (iv) There exists  $\delta$  such that  $\delta B_Y \subseteq T(B_X)$ .
- (v) There exists  $M > 0$  such that for all  $y \in Y$ , there exists  $x \in X$  with  $T(x) = y$  and  $\|x\| \leq M \|y\|$ .

*Proof.* To see (i) implies (ii), if  $T$  is surjective and open, then it is clear that  $T(U_X)$ , which is the image of an open set, is open.

To see (ii) implies (iii), if  $T(U_X)$  is open, we have  $0_Y \in T(U_X)$ , so there is some  $\delta$  such that  $U(0, \delta) \subseteq T(U_X)$ , meaning  $\delta U_Y \subseteq T(U_X)$ .

Assuming (iii), we see that  $\frac{\delta}{2} B_Y \subseteq \delta U_Y \subseteq T(U_X) \subseteq T(B_X)$ .

To see (iv) implies (v), let  $\delta$  be such that  $\delta B_Y \subseteq T(B_X)$ , and set  $M = \frac{1}{\delta}$ . Note that for  $y \in Y, y \neq 0$ ,  $\frac{\delta}{\|y\|} y \in \delta B_Y$ , meaning  $\frac{\delta}{\|y\|} y = T(x)$  for some  $x \in B_X$ , implying that  $T\left(\frac{\|y\|}{\delta} x\right) = y$ . Finally, since  $x \in B_X$ ,  $\frac{\|y\|}{\delta} \|x\| \leq \frac{1}{\delta} \|y\| = M \|y\|$ .

To see (v) implies (i), we can see that  $T$  is surjective by the assumption. Let  $U \subseteq X$  be open,  $y_0 \in T(U)$ . Then, there exists  $x_0$  such that  $T(x_0) = y_0$ , and  $\delta > 0$  such that  $U(x_0, \delta) \subseteq U$ . Note that  $U(x_0, \delta) = x_0 + \delta U_X$ , so  $x_0 + \delta U_X \subseteq U$ . Applying  $T$ , we get  $T(x_0 + \delta U_X) \subseteq T(U)$ , or  $y_0 + \delta T(U_X) \subseteq T(U)$ . By assumption, since given  $y \in U_Y$ , there exists  $x \in X$  such that  $\|x\| \leq M \|y\|$ , meaning  $\|x\| \leq M$ , we have  $U_Y \subseteq T(M U_X)$ . Thus,  $\frac{1}{M} U_Y \subseteq T(U_X)$ , meaning  $y_0 + \frac{\delta}{M} U_Y \subseteq y_0 + \delta T(U_X) \subseteq T(U)$ , so  $U_Y(y_0, \frac{\delta}{M}) \subseteq T(U)$ .  $\square$

**Definition.** Let  $X$  and  $Y$  be normed vector spaces.

- (1) A bounded linear map  $T : X \rightarrow Y$  that is surjective and open is known as a quotient map.
- (2) If  $T(U_X) = U_Y$ , then  $T$  is called a 1-quotient map.

**Exercise:** If  $T(B_X) = B_Y$ , show that  $T(U_X) = U_Y$ .

**Solution:** Since  $T(B_X) = B_Y$ , it is the case that  $(T(B_X))^{\circ} = B_Y^{\circ}$ . Since  $T$  is an open map,  $T$  is continuous, meaning  $(T(B_X))^{\circ} \subseteq T(B_X^{\circ})$ . Thus,  $T(U_X) = U_Y$ .

**Proposition:** Let  $X$  and  $Y$  be normed vector spaces with  $T : X \rightarrow Y$  a quotient map. If  $X$  is a Banach space, then  $Y$  is a Banach space.

*Proof.* We will show that  $Y$  is complete by showing that an absolutely convergent series converges.

Let  $(y_k)_k$  be a sequence in  $Y$  with  $\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \|y_k\| < \infty$ . Since  $T$  is a quotient map, there is a universal  $M > 0$  such that for all  $k$ , there is  $x_k \in X$  such that  $T(x_k) = y_k$  and  $\|x_k\| \leq M \|y_k\|$ . Thus,

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \|x_k\| &\leq M \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \|y_k\| \\ &< \infty. \end{aligned}$$

Since  $X$  is complete,  $\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} x_k$  converges. Let  $\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} x_k = x$ . Then,  $(T(\sum_{k=1}^n x_k))_n \xrightarrow{n \rightarrow \infty} T(x)$ , meaning  $\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} y_k = T(x)$ . Thus,  $\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} y_k$  converges in  $Y$ , so  $Y$  is a Banach space.  $\square$

**Proposition:** Let  $X$  be a normed vector space,  $E \subseteq X$  a closed subspace. The canonical quotient map,  $\pi : X \rightarrow X/E$  is a 1-quotient map.

*Proof.* We know that  $\|\pi(x)\| \leq \|x\|$ , meaning  $\pi(U_X) \subseteq U_{X/E}$ .

Let  $\pi(x) = x + E \subseteq U_{X/E}$ . Then,  $\inf_{y \in E} \|x - y\| \leq 1$ , meaning there exists some  $y$  such that  $\|x - y\| < 1$ , meaning  $\pi(x - y) = \pi(x)$ .  $\square$

**Corollary:** If  $X$  is a Banach space,  $E \subseteq X$  a closed subspace, then  $X/E$  is a Banach space.

**Corollary:** Let  $X$  be a normed vector space and  $E \subseteq X$  be closed. If two of  $X, E, X/E$  are complete, the third is also complete.

*Proof.* We have shown that if  $X$  is complete, then  $E$  is necessarily complete (since  $E$  is closed) and  $X/E$  is complete as shown above.

Let  $E$  and  $X/E$  be complete. We now want to show that  $X$  is complete. Let  $(x_k)_k$  be Cauchy in  $X$ .

For each  $k$ , let  $x_k = s_k + y_k$ , where  $y_k \in E$  and  $s_k + E = \pi(x_k)$ . Notice that, since  $x_k$  is Cauchy, so too is  $s_k$ , as  $\|s_k\| \leq \|x_k\|$  for all  $k$ . Additionally, for  $m, n \geq N$ , we have

$$\begin{aligned} \|x_m - x_n\| &= \|s_m + y_m - (s_n + y_n)\| \\ &\leq \|s_m - s_n\| + \|y_m - y_n\| \\ &< \varepsilon, \end{aligned}$$

implying that  $(y_k)_k$  is Cauchy in  $E$ . Since  $X/E$  and  $E$  are complete, we define  $x = \lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} s_k + \lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} y_k$ . Finally, for  $m, n \geq N$ , we have

$$\begin{aligned} \|x - x_n\| &= \lim_{m \rightarrow \infty} \|x_m - x_n\| \\ &\leq \varepsilon, \end{aligned}$$

meaning  $(x_k)_k \xrightarrow{k \rightarrow \infty} x$ , so  $X$  is complete.  $\square$

**Proposition:** Let  $X$  and  $Y$  be normed spaces,  $E \subseteq X$  a closed subspace, and  $T : X \rightarrow Y$  bounded linear with  $E \subseteq \ker(T)$ . Then, there exists a unique bounded linear map  $\bar{T} : X/E \rightarrow Y$  such that  $\bar{T} \circ \pi = T$ . Moreover,  $\bar{T}$  is injective if and only if  $E = \ker(T)$  and  $\|\bar{T}\| = \|T\|$ .

*Proof.* The existence and uniqueness of  $\bar{T} : X/E \rightarrow Y$  such that  $\bar{T} \circ \pi = T$  follows from the First Isomorphism Theorem for vector spaces, as does the fact that  $\bar{T}$  is injective and only if  $\ker(T) = E$ .

Let  $x + E \in X/E$ . For  $y \in E$ , we have

$$\begin{aligned} \|\bar{T}(x + E)\| &= \|\bar{T}(x - y + E)\| \\ &= \|T(x - y)\| \\ &\leq \|T\| \|x - y\|. \end{aligned}$$

Taking infimum over all  $y \in E$ , we get  $\|\bar{T}(x + E)\| \leq \|T\| \|x + E\|$ , meaning  $\|\bar{T}\| \leq \|T\|$ . Additionally,

$$\begin{aligned} \|T\| &= \|\bar{T} \circ \pi\| \\ &\leq \|\bar{T}\| \|\pi\| \\ &= \|\bar{T}\|. \end{aligned}$$

$\square$

**Theorem** (First Isomorphism Theorem for Normed Vector Spaces): Let  $X$  and  $Y$  be normed vector spaces,  $T \in \mathcal{B}(X, Y)$ .

(1)  $T$  is a quotient map if and only if  $\bar{T} : X/\ker(T) \rightarrow Y$  is a bicontinuous isomorphism.

(2)  $T$  is a 1-quotient map if and only if  $\bar{T} : X/\ker(T) \rightarrow Y$  is an isometric isomorphism.

*Proof.*

(1) Let  $\bar{T} : X/\ker(T) \rightarrow Y$  be a bicontinuous isomorphism. Since  $\bar{T}$  is bicontinuous, it is a homeomorphism, meaning it is open and surjective. Since  $\pi$  is a quotient map, so too is  $T : \bar{T} \circ \pi$ .

Suppose  $T$  is a quotient map. Then,  $T$  is surjective, meaning  $\bar{T}$  is an isomorphism. Since  $T$  is bounded below,  $\bar{T}$  is also bounded. Let  $\pi(x) = x + \ker(T) \in X/\ker(T)$ , with  $T(x) = y$ . Let  $M$  be such that  $\|x\| \leq M \|y\|$ . There is an  $x' \in X$  with  $T(x') = y$ , and  $\|x'\| \leq M \|y\|$ . Thus,  $x - x' \in \ker(T)$ , so  $\pi(x) = \pi(x')$ , meaning

$$\begin{aligned} \|\bar{T} \circ \pi(x)\| &= \|T \circ \pi(x')\| \\ &= \|y\| \\ &\geq M^{-1} \|x'\| \\ &\geq M^{-1} \|\pi(x')\| \\ &= M^{-1} \|\pi(x)\|, \end{aligned}$$

meaning  $T$  is bounded below.

(2) Suppose  $\bar{T} : X/\ker(T) \rightarrow Y$  is an isometric isomorphism. Then,  $\bar{T}$  is a 1-quotient map, and since  $\pi$  is a 1-quotient map, so too is  $T = \bar{T} \circ \pi$ .

Suppose  $T$  is a 1-quotient map. Since  $T$  is surjective,  $\bar{T}$  is an isomorphism. Since  $T$  is a 1-quotient map,  $\|T\| = \sup_{x \in U_X} \|T(x)\| \leq 1$ , meaning  $\|\bar{T}\| \leq \|T\| \leq 1$ . Consider  $S = (\bar{T})^{-1} : Y \rightarrow X/\ker(T)$ ;  $S$  is also an isomorphism, so  $S \circ \bar{T} = \text{id}_{X/\ker(T)}$ . We will now show  $S$  is a contraction, meaning  $\bar{T}$  is an isometry.

Let  $y \in U_Y$ . Since  $T$  is a 1-quotient map, there exists  $x \in U_X$  such that  $T(x) = y$ . Then,  $\bar{T}(x + \ker(T)) = T(x) = y$ , meaning  $S(y) = x + \ker(T)$ , and

$$\begin{aligned} \|S(y)\| &= \|x + \ker(T)\| \\ &\leq \|x\| \\ &\leq 1, \end{aligned}$$

meaning  $\|S\| \leq 1$ .

□

**Proposition:** Every separable Banach space is isometrically isomorphic to a quotient of  $\ell_1$ .

*Proof.* Let  $X$  be a separable Banach space. Since  $X$  is separable, so too is  $S_X$ . Let  $(z_n)_n$  be norm-dense in  $S_X$ , and define

$$\begin{aligned} T : \ell_1 &\rightarrow X \\ (\lambda_n)_n &\rightarrow \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \lambda_n z_n. \end{aligned}$$

This series converges absolutely:

$$\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \|\lambda_n z_n\| = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} |\lambda_n| < \infty,$$

so this series converges in  $X$ . We can also see that  $T$  is linear; additionally,  $T$  is a contraction:

$$\begin{aligned} \|T((\lambda_n)_n)\| &= \left\| \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \lambda_n z_n \right\| \\ &= \lim_{N \rightarrow \infty} \left\| \sum_{n=1}^N \lambda_n z_n \right\| \\ &\leq \lim_{N \rightarrow \infty} \sum_{n=1}^N \|\lambda_n z_n\| \\ &= \lim_{N \rightarrow \infty} \sum_{n=1}^N |\lambda_n| \\ &= \|(\lambda_n)_n\|. \end{aligned}$$

Thus,  $T(U_{\ell_1}) \subseteq U_X$ . To show that  $T(U_{\ell_1}) = U_X$ , we will use the following fact (which follows from the density of  $z_n$ ).

**Fact.** For  $\delta > 0$  and  $x \neq 0$  in  $X$ , and  $k \in \mathbb{N}$ , there exists  $n > k$  such that

$$\begin{aligned} \left\| \frac{x}{\|x\|} - z_n \right\| &< \frac{\delta}{\|x\|} \\ \|x - (\|x\|) z_n\| &< \delta \end{aligned}$$

Let  $x \in U_X$  with  $x \neq 0$ , and let  $\varepsilon > 0$ . Find  $n_1$  such that

$$\|x - (\|x\|) z_{n_1}\| < \frac{\varepsilon}{2},$$

and set  $\lambda_{n_1} = \|x\|$ .

We find  $n_2$  with  $n_2 > n_1$  and

$$\|(x - \lambda_{n_1} z_{n_1}) - (\|x - \lambda_{n_1} z_{n_1}\|) z_{n_2}\| < \frac{\varepsilon}{2^2},$$

and set  $\lambda_{n_2} = \|x - \lambda_{n_1} z_{n_1}\|$ . We have

$$\|x - (\lambda_{n_1} z_{n_1} + \lambda_{n_2} z_{n_2})\| < \frac{\varepsilon}{2^2},$$

and  $\lambda_{n_2} < \frac{\varepsilon}{2}$ .

Inductively, we obtain the subsequence  $(z_{n_k})_k$  in  $z_n$  and a sequence of scalars  $(\lambda_{n_k})_k$  such that

$$\left\| x - \sum_{j=1}^k \lambda_{n_j} z_{n_j} \right\| < \frac{\varepsilon}{2^k}$$

and

$$\|\lambda_{n_k}\| < \frac{\varepsilon}{2^{k-1}}.$$

Let  $\lambda = (\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \dots)$  with  $\lambda_i = 0$  for  $i \notin \{n_1, n_2, \dots\}$ . We can see that

$$\begin{aligned}\|\lambda_{n_1}\| &= \left\| \lambda_{n_1} + \sum_{k=2}^{\infty} \lambda_{n_k} \right\| \\ &\leq \|x\| + \sum_{k=2}^{\infty} \frac{\varepsilon}{2^{k-1}} \\ &= \|x\| + \varepsilon.\end{aligned}$$

We choose  $\varepsilon$  such that  $\|x\| + \varepsilon < 1$ , meaning  $\lambda \in U_{\ell_1}$ .

We can also see that  $\sum_{j=1}^{\infty} \lambda_{n_j} z_{n_j} = x$ , meaning  $T$  is a 1-quotient map. □

## Pillars of Functional Analysis

The five main theorems of functional analysis are:

- Baire Category Theorem;
- Open Mapping Theorem (and Bounded Inverse Theorem);
- Closed Graph Theorem;
- Uniform Boundedness Principle;
- and the Hahn Banach Theorems:
  - Hahn–Banach–Minkowski Theorem;
  - Hahn–Banach Extension Theorem;
  - Hahn–Banach Separation Theorem.

These theorems will appear time and again as we work through the fundamentals of functional analysis.

### Baire Category Theorem

**Definition** (Baire Space). Let  $\{A_n\}_{n \geq 1}$  be a countable collection of open, dense subsets of a topological space  $X$ . We say  $X$  is a Baire space if

$$\bigcap_{n \geq 1} A_n$$

is dense for every such collection.

**Definition** (Meager Set). If  $X = \bigcup_{n \geq 1} F_n$ , where  $(\overline{F_n})^\circ = \emptyset$  for each  $n$ , then we say  $X$  is meager.<sup>II</sup>

**Proposition** (Meager Spaces): If  $X$  is a Baire space, then  $X$  is nonmeager.

*Proof.* Suppose toward contradiction that  $X = \bigcup_{n \geq 1} F_n$ , with  $F_n$  all nowhere dense. Then,

$$X = \bigcup_{n \geq 1} C_n,$$

where  $C_n = \overline{F_n}$  are closed with  $C_n^\circ = \emptyset$ .

---

<sup>II</sup>In other words,  $X$  is meager if  $X$  is a countable union of nowhere dense subsets.

Let  $A_n = C_n^c$ . Then,  $A_n$  is open for all  $n$ , and  $\overline{A_n} = \overline{C_n^c} = (C_n^c)^\circ = X$ , meaning  $A_n$  are all open and dense.

Since  $X$  is a Baire space, we know that  $\bigcap_{n \geq 1} A_n$  is dense. However, we also have

$$\begin{aligned} \emptyset &= X^c \\ &= \left( \bigcup_{n \geq 1} C_n \right)^c \\ &= \bigcap_{n \geq 1} C_n^c \\ &= \bigcap_{n \geq 1} A_n. \end{aligned}$$

□

**Theorem** (Baire Category Theorem): If  $(X, d)$  is a complete metric space, then  $X$  is a Baire space.

*Proof.* Let  $\{A_n\}_{n \geq 1}$  be a collection of open dense subsets of  $X$ . Let  $U_0$  be any ball of radius  $r > 0$ , and set  $B_0 = \overline{U_0}$ . Since  $A_1 \cap U_0$  is open and nonempty, it contains a closed ball  $B_1$  with radius less than  $r/2$ .

Set  $U_1 = B_1^\circ$ . Similarly, we find a closed ball  $B_2$  with radius less than  $r/4$  such that  $B_2 \subseteq A_2 \cap U_1$ , and set  $U_2 = B_2^\circ$ .

Continuing in this manner, we find a closed ball  $B_n$  with radius less than  $r/2^n$  with  $B_n \subseteq A_n \cap U_{n-1}$ , and the chain

$$B_0 \supseteq U_0 \supseteq B_1 \supseteq U_1 \supseteq B_2 \supseteq U_2 \supseteq \dots$$

Letting  $(x_n)_n$  be the center of  $B_n$ , we can see that  $x_n$  forms a Cauchy sequence in  $X$ , as the distance between  $x_m$  and  $x_n$  with  $n > m$  is no more than  $\frac{r}{2^{m-1}}$ .

Since  $X$  is complete,  $(x_n)_n \rightarrow x \in X$ . We claim that  $x$  belongs to  $\bigcap_{n \geq 1} B_n$ .

Suppose toward contradiction that  $x \notin B_N$  for some  $N \in \mathbb{N}$ . For  $n \geq N$ , we have  $x \notin B_n$ , so  $d(x_n, x) \geq \text{dist}_{B_n}(x) > 0$ , which contradicts the fact that  $(x_n)_n \rightarrow x$ .

Thus,  $x \in \bigcap_{n \geq 1} B_n \subseteq \bigcap_{n \geq 1} A_n$ . Since  $\bigcap_{n \geq 1} B_n \subseteq U_0$ , we have  $(\bigcap_{n \geq 1} A_n) \cap U_0 \neq \emptyset$ , meaning  $\bigcap_{n \geq 1} A_n$  is dense in  $X$ . □

**Corollary:** Let  $X$  be an infinite-dimensional Banach space. The cardinality of the Hamel basis of  $X$  is uncountable.

*Proof.* Suppose toward contradiction that  $\{b_k\}_{k \in \mathbb{N}}$  is a Hamel basis for  $X$ . For each  $n$ , set  $E_n = \text{span}\{b_1, \dots, b_n\}$ . Each  $E_n$  is closed, meaning  $\overline{E_n} = E_n \neq X$  since  $X$  is infinite-dimensional.

Additionally,  $E_n^\circ = \emptyset$  for each  $n$ , meaning the  $E_n$  are nowhere dense.

Since  $\{b_k\}_{k \in \mathbb{N}}$  is a spanning set,

$$X = \bigcup_{n \geq 1} E_n,$$

implying that  $X$  is meager. □

**Exercise:** Let  $X$  be a Banach space, and  $Z \subseteq X$  a subspace. Is it true that  $\dim(Z) = \dim(\overline{Z})$ ?



**Solution:** It is not the case that  $\dim(Z) = \dim(\overline{Z})$ . For example, consider the subspace  $c_c \subseteq \ell_\infty$ . Then, the Hamel basis of  $c_c$  consists of  $e_n$ , which consists of 1 at index  $n$  and zero elsewhere, implying that  $\dim(c_c) = \aleph_0$ . However,  $\overline{c_c} = c_0$ , and  $c_0$  is an infinite-dimensional Banach space, meaning that  $\dim(\overline{c_c}) = 2^{\aleph_0} \neq \aleph_0$ .

## Open Mapping Theorem

A surjective continuous map between topological spaces is not necessarily an open map — however, if  $X$  and  $Y$  are Banach spaces, and  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  is a surjective linear map. This is the Open Mapping theorem, which yields the result that a continuous linear bijection between Banach spaces always admits a bounded inverse.

**Lemma:** Let  $X$  and  $Y$  be Banach spaces, and suppose  $T \in \mathcal{B}(X, Y)$ .

- (1) If  $U_Y \subseteq \overline{T(\delta U_X)}$  for some  $\delta > 0$ , then  $U_Y \subseteq T(2\delta U_X)$ .
- (2) If  $\delta U_Y \subseteq \overline{T(U_X)}$  for some  $\delta > 0$ , then  $\frac{\delta}{2} U_Y \subseteq T(U_X)$ .

*Proof.*

- (1) Let  $y \in U_Y$ . By our assumption, there exists  $x_1 \in \delta U_X$  such that  $\|y - T(x_1)\| < 1/2$ . Additionally,

$$\begin{aligned} y - T(x_1) &\in \frac{1}{2} U_Y \\ &\subseteq \frac{1}{2} \overline{T(\delta U_X)} \\ &= \overline{T\left(\frac{\delta}{2} U_X\right)}. \end{aligned}$$

Thus, there exists  $x_2 \in \frac{\delta}{2} U_X$  such that  $\|(y - T(x_1)) - T(x_2)\| < \frac{1}{4}$ , implying that

$$\begin{aligned} y - T(x_1) - T(x_2) &\in \frac{1}{4} U_Y \\ &\subseteq \overline{T\left(\frac{\delta}{4} U_X\right)}. \end{aligned}$$

Inductively, we have a sequence  $(x_k)_k \in \frac{\delta}{2^{k-1}} U_X$  for each  $k$ , and

$$\left\| y - \sum_{j=1}^k T(x_j) \right\| < 2^{-k}.$$

We consider  $\sum_{j=1}^{\infty} x_j$ . Since

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} \|x_j\| &\leq \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} \frac{\delta}{2^{j-1}} \\ &= 2\delta \\ &< \infty, \end{aligned}$$

the series converges to  $x \in X$  since  $X$  is complete.

Additionally, since  $\|x\| \leq \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} \|x_j\| \leq 2\delta$ , we have  $x \in 2\delta U_X$ , and  $T(x) = y$  by the continuity of  $T$ .

- (2) If  $\delta U_Y \subseteq \overline{T(U_X)}$ , then  $U_Y \subseteq \frac{1}{\delta} \overline{T(U_X)}$ , so  $U_Y \subseteq \overline{T\left(\frac{1}{\delta} U_X\right)}$ , meaning  $U_Y \subseteq T\left(\frac{2}{\delta} U_X\right)$ , or  $\frac{\delta}{2} U_Y \subseteq T(U_X)$ .

□

**Theorem** (Open Mapping Theorem): Let  $X$  and  $Y$  be Banach spaces,  $T \in \mathcal{B}(X, Y)$  surjective. Then,  $T$  is open and thus a quotient mapping.

*Proof.* We will show that  $\delta U_Y \subseteq T(U_X)$  for some  $\delta > 0$ . This is enough to show that  $T$  is a quotient mapping.

We can write

$$\begin{aligned} X &= \bigcup_{n \geq 1} nU_X \\ Y &= T(X) \\ &= \bigcup_{n \geq 1} T(nU_X) \end{aligned}$$

since  $T$  is onto. Since  $Y$  is nonmeager, there is an  $m \geq 1$  such that  $\overline{T(mU_X)}^\circ \neq \emptyset$ . There exists  $y_0 \in Y$  and  $\varepsilon > 0$  such that  $U_Y(y_0, \varepsilon) \subseteq \overline{T(mU_X)}$ . We claim that

$$\begin{aligned} \varepsilon U_Y &= U_Y(0, \varepsilon) \\ &\subseteq T(mU_X). \end{aligned}$$

Let  $z \in \varepsilon U_Y$ . Note that  $y_0 + z$  and  $y_0 - z$  are in  $U_Y(y_0, \varepsilon)$ , and

$$\begin{aligned} 2z &= (y_0 + z) - (y_0 - z) \\ &\in \overline{T(mU_X)} - \overline{T(mU_X)}. \end{aligned}$$

We write  $2z = z_1 - z_2$ , with  $z_1, z_2 \in \overline{T(mU_X)}$ . We can find sequences  $(T(x_k))_k$  and  $(T(x'_k))_k$  with  $(T(x_k))_k \rightarrow z_1$  and  $(T(x'_k))_k \rightarrow z_2$ . Thus, we have

$$\begin{aligned} 2z &= \lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} (T(x_k) - T(x'_k)) \\ &= \lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} T(x_k - x'_k), \end{aligned}$$

where  $\|x_k - x'_k\| \leq 2m$ . Thus,  $2z \in \overline{T(mU_X)} = 2\overline{T(mU_X)}$ , so  $z \in \overline{T(mU_X)}$ .

We now have

$$\frac{\varepsilon}{m} U_Y \subseteq \overline{T(U_X)},$$

so

$$\frac{\varepsilon}{2m} U_Y \subseteq T(U_X).$$

Setting  $\delta = \frac{\varepsilon}{2m}$ , we finish the proof. □

If  $T : X \rightarrow Y$  is bijective linear, then  $T^{-1} : Y \rightarrow X$  is linear. If  $X = Y$ , we say  $T$  is invertible in the unital algebra  $\mathcal{L}(X)$ . However, if  $X$  and  $Y$  are normed vector spaces, we also have to be concerned with the continuity of  $T^{-1}$ .

**Corollary** (Bounded Inverse Theorem): Let  $X$  and  $Y$  be Banach spaces,  $T : X \rightarrow Y$  is linear, bounded, and bijective. Then,  $T^{-1} : Y \rightarrow X$  is also bounded.

*Proof.* Since  $T$  is surjective,  $T$  is open, so  $T^{-1}$  is continuous. □

**Example.** Consider the normed space  $Y = (C([0, 1]), \|\cdot\|_1)$ . To show that  $Y$  is not complete, we let  $X = (C([0, 1]), \|\cdot\|_\infty)$ , which we know is complete.

The identity function from  $X$  to  $Y$  is bijective and bounded linear since  $\|\cdot\|_1 \leq \|\cdot\|_\infty$ . If  $Y$  were to be complete, then it would imply that the inverse map is bounded. However, since there is no  $C$  such that  $\|\cdot\|_\infty \leq C \|\cdot\|_1$ , it is not the case that  $Y$  is complete.

**Definition.** Let  $X$  and  $Y$  be normed spaces. A bounded linear map  $T \in \mathcal{B}(X, Y)$  is called invertible if there is a bounded linear map  $S \in \mathcal{B}(Y, X)$  with  $T \circ S = \text{id}_Y$  and  $S \circ T = \text{id}_X$ . We write  $T^{-1} = S$ .

**Corollary:** Let  $T \in \mathcal{B}(X, Y)$  with  $X$  and  $Y$  Banach spaces. The following are equivalent.

- (i)  $T$  is bounded below.
- (ii)  $T$  is injective and  $\text{Ran}(T) \subseteq Y$  is closed.
- (iii)  $T : X \rightarrow \text{Ran}(T)$  is a bicontinuous isomorphism.

*Proof.* For (i) to (ii), if  $T$  is bounded below, then  $\ker T = \{0\}$ , so  $T$  is injective. Additionally, since  $T$  is bounded below, if  $(T(x_n))_n$  is a Cauchy sequence in  $\text{Ran}(T)$ , then

$$\begin{aligned} C \|x_n - x_m\| &\leq \|T(x_n - x_m)\| \\ &= \|T(x_n) - T(x_m)\|, \end{aligned}$$

meaning  $(x_n)_n$  is a Cauchy sequence in  $X$ . Since  $T$  is continuous,  $(T(x_n))_n \rightarrow T(x) \in \text{Ran}(T)$ .

For (ii) to (i), since  $Y$  is complete and  $\text{Ran}(T) \subseteq Y$  is closed,  $\text{Ran}(T)$  is a Banach space, so  $T^{-1} : \text{Ran}(T) \rightarrow X$  is bounded. Thus,

$$\begin{aligned} \|x\| &= \|T^{-1}(T(x))\| \\ &\leq \|T^{-1}\|_{\text{op}} \|T(x)\|, \end{aligned}$$

meaning  $\|T(x)\| \geq \|T^{-1}\|_{\text{op}}^{-1} \|x\|$  for all  $x \in X$ .

To show that (ii) is true if and only if (iii) is true, we can see that since  $T$  is bounded and  $T$  is bounded below, it is the case that  $T$  is a bicontinuous isomorphism.  $\square$

**Corollary:** Let  $X$  and  $Y$  be Banach spaces,  $T \in \mathcal{B}(X, Y)$ . Then,  $T$  is invertible if and only if  $T$  is bounded below and surjective.

### Complemented Subspaces and Direct Sums

For any normed vector spaces  $X$  and  $Y$ , we can form the product  $X \oplus_p Y$  by defining  $\|(x, y)\| = (\|x\|^p + \|y\|^p)^{1/p}$  for all  $p \in [1, \infty)$ .

A vector space  $Z$  with subspaces  $X$  and  $Y$  is called the direct sum of  $X$  and  $Y$  if

- (a) for all  $z \in Z$ , there exist  $x \in X$  and  $y \in Y$  such that  $z = x + y$ ;
- (b)  $X \cap Y = \{0\}$ .

We write  $Z = X \oplus Y$  for the internal direct sum.

**Proposition:** Let  $(Z, \|\cdot\|_Z)$  be a Banach space, and suppose  $X$  and  $Y$  are closed subspaces of  $Z$  with  $Z = X \oplus Y$ . Then,  $Z \cong X \oplus_p Y$  for all  $p \in [1, \infty]$ .

*Proof.* Let  $p = 1$ . Set  $\phi : X \oplus_1 Y \rightarrow Z$  by taking  $\phi((x, y)) = x + y$ . Since  $Z = X \oplus Y$ , this is a bijection, hence an isomorphism. Additionally,

$$\begin{aligned}\|\phi((x, y))\|_Z &= \|x + y\|_Z \\ &\leq \|x\|_Z + \|y\|_Z \\ &= \|(x, y)\|_1,\end{aligned}$$

meaning  $\phi$  is bounded. Thus,  $\phi^{-1}$  is also bounded, meaning  $\phi$  is bicontinuous. The proof is similar for all other  $p \in (1, \infty]$ .  $\square$

**Definition.** If  $Z$  is a normed space,  $X$  and  $Y$  are closed subspaces of  $Z$  such that  $Z = X \oplus Y$ , we say  $Z$  is the topological internal direct sum of  $X$  and  $Y$ .

**Definition.** Let  $Z$  be a normed space, and suppose  $X$  is a closed subspace of  $Z$ . We say  $X$  is complemented in  $Z$  if there is a closed  $Y \subseteq Z$  with  $X \oplus Y = Z$ .

Not all closed subspaces are complemented.

**Proposition:** Let  $T : X \rightarrow Y$  be a bounded linear map between Banach spaces. If  $Z \subseteq Y$  is a closed subspace such that  $Y = \text{Ran}(T) \oplus Z$ , then  $\text{Ran}(T)$  is closed (meaning the internal direct sum is topological).

*Proof.* Passing to the quotient

$$X/\ker(T) \rightarrow Y, x + \ker(T) \mapsto T(x),$$

we may assume that  $T$  is injective. The map  $S : X \oplus_\infty Z \rightarrow Y$ ,  $S(x, z) = T(x) + z$  is bounded and bijective. Thus,  $S$  is bounded below, so for some  $C > 0$ , we have

$$\begin{aligned}\|T(x)\| &= \|S(x, 0)\| \\ &\geq C \|(x, 0)\|_\infty \\ &= C \|x\|,\end{aligned}$$

meaning  $T$  is bounded below, and thus has closed range.  $\square$

**Corollary:** If  $X$  and  $Y$  are Banach spaces, and  $T : X \rightarrow Y$  is bounded Fredholm,<sup>III</sup> then  $T$  has closed range.

*Proof.* There is a subspace  $C \subseteq Y$  with  $C$  linearly isomorphic to  $\text{coker}(T)$ , and  $Y = \text{Ran}(T) \oplus C$ . Since  $T$  is Fredholm,  $\dim(C)$  is finite, meaning  $C$  is closed. Thus,  $\text{Ran}(T)$  is closed.  $\square$

## Closed Graph Theorem

**Definition.** If  $f : A \rightarrow B$  is a map between arbitrary sets, then the graph of  $f$  is

$$\begin{aligned}\text{graph}(f) &= \{(a, f(a)) \mid a \in A\} \\ &\subseteq A \times B.\end{aligned}$$

**Proposition:** If  $(X, d)$  and  $(Y, \rho)$  are metric spaces, and  $f : (X, d) \rightarrow (Y, \rho)$  is continuous, then  $\text{graph}(f) \subseteq X \times Y$  is closed under the product topology.<sup>IV</sup>

*Proof.* Let  $(x_n, f(x_n))_n$  be a sequence in  $\text{graph}(f)$  such that  $(x_n, f(x_n))_n \rightarrow (x, y)$  in  $X \times Y$ . Then,  $(x_n)_n \rightarrow x$  in  $X$  and  $(f(x_n))_n \rightarrow y$  in  $Y$ .

By the continuity of  $f$ , we have  $(f(x_n))_n \rightarrow f(x)$ , and since limits are unique, we have  $f(x) = y$ . Thus,

$$\begin{aligned}(x, y) &= (x, f(x)) \\ &\in \text{graph}(f).\end{aligned}$$

$\square$

<sup>III</sup>A linear map is Fredholm if both  $\ker(T)$  and  $\text{coker}(T)$  are finite. Here,  $\text{coker}(T) = Y/\text{Ran}(T)$ .

<sup>IV</sup>The product topology is the coarsest topology on  $X \times Y$  such that the projection maps  $\pi_X$  and  $\pi_Y$  are continuous.

Thus, we can see that the graph of any continuous function is closed in the product topology. However, the converse fails in the general case. For instance,

$$f : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$$

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{x} & x \neq 0 \\ 0 & x = 0 \end{cases}$$

has a closed graph, but  $f$  is not continuous.

However, with linear maps between Banach spaces, the converse is actually true.

**Theorem** (Closed Graph Theorem): Let  $X$  and  $Y$  be Banach spaces, and let  $T : X \rightarrow Y$  be a linear map. Then,  $T$  is continuous if and only if  $\text{graph}(T) \subseteq X \times Y$  is closed with respect to the product topology on  $X \times Y$ .

*Proof.* The forward direction follows from the previous proposition.

Suppose  $\text{graph}(T) \subseteq X \times Y$  is closed in the product topology. Note that the product topology coincides with the  $\|\cdot\|_1$  topology, with  $\|(x, y)\|_1 = \|x\| + \|y\|$ . Thus,  $(\text{graph}(T), \|\cdot\|_1)$  is a Banach space.

Consider the projection map  $P : \text{graph}(T) \rightarrow X$  defined by  $P((x, T(x))) = x$ , which is bijective. We also have

$$\begin{aligned} \|P((x, T(x)))\| &= \|x\| \\ &\leq \|x\| + \|T(x)\| \\ &= \|(x, T(x))\|_1, \end{aligned}$$

meaning  $P$  is bounded. Thus,  $P$  is bicontinuous, meaning it is bounded below, so for some constant  $C$ , we have

$$\begin{aligned} \|x\| &= \|P((x, T(x)))\| \\ &\geq C \|(x, T(x))\|_1 \\ &\geq C \|T(x)\|, \end{aligned}$$

meaning  $\|T(x)\| \leq \frac{1}{C} \|x\|$ , so  $T$  is bounded. □

**Example.** Consider the collection of sequences

$$X = \left\{ f : \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{C} \mid \sum_{k \geq 1} k |f(k)| < \infty \right\}.$$

Note that  $X \subseteq \ell_1$ , and  $X$  is a linear subspace. Let

$$\begin{aligned} T : (X, \|\cdot\|_1) &\rightarrow \ell_1 \\ T(f)(k) &= (kf(k))_1, \end{aligned}$$

which is well-defined and linear. We will show that  $T$  is unbounded.

Let  $f_n$  denote the element of  $X$  defined by

$$f_n = (\underbrace{1, 1, \dots, 1}_{n \text{ times}}, 0, 0, \dots).$$

For each  $f_n$ , the norm is  $\|f_n\|_1 = n$ . We also see that

$$T(f_n) = (1, 2, \dots, n, 0, 0, \dots),$$

with norm

$$\|T(f_n)\|_1 = \frac{n(n+1)}{2}.$$

If  $T$  were bounded, we would have a constant  $C$  such that

$$\frac{n(n+1)}{2} \leq Cn$$

for all  $n$ . This is not possible, meaning  $T$  is unbounded.

However, at the same time,  $\text{graph}(T)$  is closed, as for  $(f_n)_n \rightarrow f$  in  $X$  and  $(T(f_n))_n \rightarrow g$  in  $\ell_1$ , we have

$$(f_n(k))_n \rightarrow f(k)$$

and

$$(kf(k))_n \rightarrow g(k)$$

for all  $k \in \mathbb{N}$ , implying that  $g(k) = kf(k)$ , or that  $T(f) = g$ .

The closed graph theorem thus implies that  $X \subseteq \ell_1$  must not be closed.

We can use the closed graph theorem to obtain insights about the orthogonal projection operators.<sup>v</sup>

**Proposition:** Let  $Z = X \oplus Y$  be a topological internal direct sum of a Banach space  $Z$ . Then, the projection operators  $P_X$  and  $P_Y$  onto the closed subspaces of  $X$  and  $Y$  respectively are bounded.

*Proof.* Let  $(z_n)_n$  and  $(P_X(z_n))_n$  be sequences in  $z$  with  $(z_n)_n \rightarrow z$  and  $(P_X(z_n))_n \rightarrow u$  for some  $z, u \in Z$ .

For each  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ , we may write  $z_n = x_n + y_n$ , with  $x_n \in X$  and  $y_n \in Y$ . Since  $X$  is closed, and  $x_n = P_X(z_n)$ , it is the case that  $u \in X$ . Then,  $y_n = z_n - x_n$  converges to  $z - u$ ; since  $Y$  is closed,  $z - u \in Y$ . Setting  $y = z - u$ , we have

$$\begin{aligned} P_X(z) &= P_X(u + y) \\ &= P_X(u) + P_X(y) \\ &= u. \end{aligned}$$

Thus, the graph of  $P_X$  is closed. □

**Proposition:** Let  $Z$  be a Banach space, and let  $P \in \mathcal{B}(Z)$  be a projection. Then,  $\ker(P)$  and  $\text{Ran}(P)$  are closed subspaces, and

$$Z = \text{Ran}(P) \oplus \ker(P).$$

*Proof.* For every  $z \in Z$ , we may express  $z = P(z) + (z - P(z))$ . Since  $P(z - P(z)) = P(z) - P^2(z) = P(z) - P(z) = 0$ , we can see that  $Z = \text{Ran}(P) \oplus \ker(P)$ .

We now need to show that  $\text{Ran}(P)$  is closed. Let  $(x_n)_n$  be a sequence in  $\text{Ran}(p)$  with  $(x_n)_n \rightarrow z$ . Then, for each  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ , we may write  $x_n = P(z_n)$ . Since  $P$  is continuous, we can see that  $(P(x_n)) \rightarrow P(z)$ . However, at the same time, we may write  $x_n = P(z_n)$ , so

$$\begin{aligned} P(x_n) &= P(P(z_n)) \\ &= P(z_n) \\ &= x_n \\ &\rightarrow z, \end{aligned}$$

Which implies that  $z = P(z) \in \text{Ran}(P)$  by the uniqueness of limits. □

**Corollary:** Let  $Z$  be a Banach space, and let  $X \subseteq Z$  be a closed subspace. Then,  $X$  is complemented in  $Z$  if and only if there is a projection  $P : Z \rightarrow Z$  with  $\text{Ran}(P) = X$ .

<sup>v</sup>Idempotent operator, where  $P^2 = P$ , are also known as projections. I will refer to them as projections.

## Uniform Boundedness Principle

The uniform boundedness principle is often useful when dealing with a family of bounded operators. It says that a pointwise bounded family of operators on a Banach space is bounded.

**Theorem** (Uniform Boundedness Principle): Let  $X$  and  $Y$  be normed vector spaces, and consider a family of bounded operators  $\{T_i\}_{i \in I} \subseteq \mathcal{B}(X, Y)$ .

- (1) If  $\sup_{T_i(x)} < \infty$  for all  $x \in A \subseteq X$  with  $A$  nonmeager, then

$$\sup_{i \in I} \|T_i\|_{\text{op}} < \infty.$$

- (2) If  $X$  is a Banach space with  $\sup_{i \in I} \|T_i(x)\| < \infty$  for all  $x \in X$ , then

$$\sup_{i \in I} \|T_i\|_{\text{op}} < \infty.$$

*Proof.* We only need to prove (1), as (2) follows.

For each  $i \in I$  and  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ , define

$$E_{n,i} = \{x \in X \mid \|T_i(x)\| \leq n\}.$$

Notice that

$$E_{n,i} = T_i^{-1} \circ \|\cdot\|^{-1}([0, n]).$$

Since both the norm and  $T_i$  are continuous, each  $E_{n,i}$  is closed. Therefore,

$$\begin{aligned} E_n &= \bigcap_{i \in I} E_{n,i} \\ &= \left\{ x \in X \mid \sup_{i \in I} \|T_i(x)\| \leq n \right\} \end{aligned}$$

is also closed, meaning  $\overline{E_n} = E_n$ .

By our assumption,

$$A = \bigcup_{n \geq 1} E_n.$$

Since  $A$  is nonmeager, there is  $m \in \mathbb{N}$ ,  $x_0 \in X$ , and  $r > 0$  such that  $B(x_0, r) \subseteq E_m$ .<sup>vi</sup>

We will now prove that  $B(0, r) = rB_X \subseteq E_{2m}$ . Let  $x$  be such that  $\|x\| < r$ . Then,  $x + x_0 \in B(x_0, r) \subseteq E_m$ . For each  $i$ , we also have

$$\begin{aligned} \|T_i(x)\| &= \|T_i(x) - T_i(x_0) + T_i(x_0)\| \\ &\leq \|T_i(x) - T_i(x_0)\| + \|T_i(x_0)\| \\ &= \|T_i(x + x_0) - T_i(x_0)\| + \|T_i(x_0)\| \\ &\leq 2m, \end{aligned}$$

meaning  $\sup_{i \in I} \|T_i(x)\| \leq 2m$ , meaning  $x \in E_{2m}$ .

Given  $x \in B_X \setminus \{0\}$ , we have  $rx \in E_{2m}$ , so  $T_i(rx) \leq 2m$  for all  $i \in I$ , meaning

$$\|T_i(x)\| \leq \frac{2m}{r}$$

for all  $i \in I$ , so  $\sup_{x \in B_X} \|T_i(x)\| \leq \frac{2m}{r}$ . Thus,  $\sup_{i \in I} \|T_i\|_{\text{op}} \leq \frac{2m}{r}$ . □

<sup>vi</sup>Select  $\delta$  such that  $U(x_0, \delta) \subseteq E_m$ , and then select  $r = \delta/2$ .

*Alternative Proof of (2).* Suppose toward contradiction that  $\sup_{i \in I} \|T_i\|_{\text{op}} = \infty$ . We can choose a sequence of operators  $(T_{i_n})_n$  such that  $\|T_{i_n}\|_{\text{op}} \geq 4^n$ . We write  $T_{i_n} := T_n$ . We will construct some  $x \in X$  such that  $(\|T_n(x)\|)_n$  is unbounded, yielding a contradiction.

For any  $x \in X$  and  $r > 0$ , we have

$$\begin{aligned} \sup_{y \in B(x, r)} &\geq r \|T\|_{\text{op}} \\ &> \frac{2}{3} r \|T\|_{\text{op}}. \end{aligned}$$

Setting  $x_0 = 0$ ,  $T = T_1$ , and  $r_0 = T^0$ , we can find  $x_1$  with

$$\begin{aligned} \|x_1 - x_0\| &\leq r_0 \\ \|T_1(x_1)\| &\geq \frac{2r}{3} \|T_1\|_{\text{op}}. \end{aligned}$$

We find  $x_2$  given  $T_2$  such that for  $r_1 = 3^{-1}$

$$\|x_2 - x_1\| \leq r_1 \|T_2(x_2)\| \geq \frac{2r_1}{3} \|T_2\|_{\text{op}}.$$

Inductively, we find  $x_{n+1}$  such that for  $r_n = 3^{-n}$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} \|x_{n+1} - x_n\| &\leq r_n \\ \|T_{n+1}(x_{n+1})\| &\geq \frac{2r_n}{3} \|T_{n+1}\|_{\text{op}}. \end{aligned}$$

Thus, we have a sequence  $(x_n)_n$  with

$$\begin{aligned} \|x_{n+1} - x_n\| &\leq 3^{-n} \\ \|T_n(x_n)\| &\geq \frac{2}{3^n} \|T_n\|_{\text{op}}. \end{aligned}$$

This means  $(x_n)_n$  is Cauchy, and thus converges to  $x \in X$  with  $\|x - x_n\| \leq \frac{1}{(2)(3^{n-1})}$ . Thus yields

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{1}{(2)(3^{n-1})} \|T_n\|_{\text{op}} &\geq \|T_n\|_{\text{op}} \|x_n - x\| \\ &\geq \|T_n(x_n - x)\| \\ &= \|T_n(x_n) - T_n(x)\| \\ &\geq \|T_n(x_n)\| - \|T_n(x)\| \\ &\geq \frac{2}{3^n} \|T_n\|_{\text{op}} - \|T_n(x)\|. \end{aligned}$$

Thus, we have

$$\begin{aligned} \|T_n(x)\| &\geq \frac{2}{3^n} \|T_n\|_{\text{op}} - \frac{1}{(2)(3^{n-1})} \|T_n\|_{\text{op}} \\ &= \frac{1}{(2)3^n} \|T_n\|_{\text{op}} \\ &\geq \frac{1}{2} \left(\frac{4}{3}\right)^n \end{aligned}$$

□



**Corollary** (Banach–Steinhaus Theorem): Let  $X, Y$  be Banach spaces, and let  $(T_n)_n$  be a sequence of bounded linear operators in  $\mathcal{B}(X, Y)$  with  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} (T_n(x))$  exists for every  $x \in X$ . Then,

$$T(x) = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} (T_n(x))$$

defines a bounded linear map from  $X$  to  $Y$ .

*Proof.* We can see that  $T$  is linear by its definition. Since  $(T_n(x))_n$  converges in  $Y$  for all  $x \in X$ , we have  $(T_n(x))$  is bounded in  $Y$  for all  $x \in X$ . Thus,  $\sup_{n \geq 1} \|T_n(x)\| < \infty$  for all  $x \in X$ , so  $\sup_{n \geq 1} \|T_n\|_{\text{op}} = C$  for some  $C > 0$ .

Given  $x \in B_X$ , we can see that

$$\begin{aligned} \|T(x)\| &= \left\| \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} (T_n(x)) \right\| \\ &= \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \|T_n(x)\| \\ &\leq \limsup_{n \rightarrow \infty} \|T_n\|_{\text{op}} \|x\| \\ &\leq \limsup_{n \rightarrow \infty} \|T_n\|_{\text{op}} \\ &\leq C, \end{aligned}$$

meaning  $\|T\|_{\text{op}} \leq C$ . □

**Example.** Let  $(z_k)_k$  be a sequence such that  $\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} z_k y_k$  converges for every  $(y_k)_k \in c_0$ . We claim that  $(z_k)_k \in \ell_1$ .

Consider the map

$$\begin{aligned} T_n : c_0 &\rightarrow \mathbb{C} \\ T_n(y) &= \sum_{k=1}^n z_k y_k. \end{aligned}$$

We can see that

$$\begin{aligned} |T_n(y)| &= \left| \sum_{k=1}^n z_k y_k \right| \\ &\leq \sum_{k=1}^n |z_k y_k| \\ &\leq \|y\|_{\infty} \left( \sum_{k=1}^n |z_k| \right). \end{aligned}$$

Thus, each  $T_n$  is bounded linear with  $\|T_n\|_{\text{op}} \leq \sum_{k=1}^n |z_k|$ .<sup>vii</sup>

By assumption, we have that  $(T_n(y))_n$  converges, meaning  $\sup_{n \geq 1} |T_n(y)| < \infty$  for all  $y \in c_0$ . The Uniform Boundedness Principle gives  $\sup_{n \geq 1} \|T_n\|_{\text{op}} < \infty$ . Thus,

$$\begin{aligned} \|z\|_1 &= \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} |z_k| \\ &= \sup_{n \geq 1} \left( \sum_{k=1}^n |z_k| \right) \end{aligned}$$

---

<sup>vii</sup>It is an exercise to show that this is an inequality. I'm not sure how to do it though.

$$= \sup_{n \geq 1} \|T_n\|_{\text{op}} < \infty.$$

**Example (Product Maps).** Let  $\{X_i\}_{i \in I}$  be a family of Banach spaces, and consider the product

$$\prod_{i \in I} X_i = \left\{ (x_i)_i \mid x_i \in X_i, \sup_{i \in I} \|x_i\| < \infty \right\}.$$

The product space is a Banach space with pointwise operations and the norm  $\|(x_i)_{i \in I}\|_\infty = \sup_{i \in I} \|x_i\|$ .

Consider a Banach space  $Z$  and a linear map  $Z \rightarrow \prod_{i \in I} X_i$ .

We can see that if  $T$  is continuous, then  $\pi_j \circ T : Z \rightarrow X_j$ , where  $\pi_j$  is the canonical projection map on  $\prod_{i \in I} X_i$ , is also continuous for each  $j$ . However, it is also the case that this is a sufficient condition — that is, if  $\pi_j \circ T$  is continuous for each  $j$ , then  $T$  is continuous.

*Proof.* Let  $\iota_j : X_j \hookrightarrow \prod_{i \in I} X_i$  be the inclusion map, and  $T_j : Z \rightarrow \prod_{i \in I} X_i$  be given by

$$T_j = \iota_j \circ \pi_j \circ T.$$

Then,

$$\begin{aligned} \sup_{j \in I} \|T_j(z)\| &= \sup_{j \in I} \|\pi_j \circ T(z)\| \\ &= \|T(z)\| \\ &< \infty \end{aligned}$$

for all  $z \in Z$ . Thus,  $\sup_{j \in I} \|T_j\|_{\text{op}} < \infty$ , so  $\|T\|_{\text{op}}$  is bounded.  $\square$

## Hahn–Banach Theorems

The Hahn–Banach extension theorems allow us to extend continuous linear functionals from subspaces to the full vector space, while the separation theorems allow us to separate points from closed subspaces.

**Definition (Algebraic Dual).** Let  $X$  be a vector space over  $\mathbb{F}$ . Then,  $X' = \mathcal{L}(X, \mathbb{F})$ , which consists of *all* linear functionals from  $X$  into  $\mathbb{F}$ , is known as the algebraic dual.

**Definition (Continuous Dual).** Let  $X$  be a normed vector space over  $\mathbb{F}$ . Then,  $X^* = \mathcal{B}(X, \mathbb{F})$ , which consists of all *continuous* linear functionals from  $X$  into  $\mathbb{F}$ , is known as the continuous dual.<sup>viii</sup>

**Definition (Hyperplane).** A hyperplane is a subspace  $E \subseteq X$  such that  $\dim(X/E) = 1$ . An affine hyperplane is of the form  $x_0 + E$  for some fixed  $x_0 \in X$ .

**Proposition:** Let  $X$  be a normed vector space over  $\mathbb{F}$ .

- (1) If  $\varphi \in X'$  is not zero, then  $\varphi$  is bounded if and only if  $\ker(\varphi) \subseteq X$  is closed. In this case,  $X/\ker(\varphi) \cong \mathbb{F}$  are bicontinuously isomorphic.
- (2) Given a closed hyperplane  $M \subseteq X$ , there is a  $\varphi \in X^*$  with  $\ker(\varphi) = M$ .
- (3) If  $\varphi \in X'$  is unbounded, then  $\ker(\varphi) \subseteq X$  is norm-dense.

*Proof.*

---

<sup>viii</sup>Since this is functional analysis, any mention of the “dual space” will refer to the continuous dual.

- (1) If  $\varphi$  is continuous, then  $\ker(\varphi) = \varphi^{-1}(0)$  is closed. Thus, from the definition of a quotient map,  $\tilde{\varphi} : X/\ker(\varphi) \rightarrow \mathbb{F}$  defined by  $x + \ker(\varphi) \mapsto \varphi(x)$ , is a bicontinuous isomorphism from  $X/\ker(\varphi)$  to  $\mathbb{F}$ .

Conversely, if  $\ker(\varphi)$  is closed in  $X$ , then  $X/\ker(\varphi)$  is a normed space with dimension 1, meaning  $\tilde{\varphi}$  is continuous (as it is a linear map of dimension 1). Thus,  $\varphi = \tilde{\varphi} \circ \pi$  is continuous.

- (2) Since  $X/M$  is a normed space with  $\dim(X/M) = 1$ , there is a bicontinuous isomorphism  $\psi : X/M \rightarrow \mathbb{F}$ . Set  $\varphi = \psi \circ \pi$ , where  $\pi$  denotes the canonical projection map. Then,  $\varphi$  is continuous with  $\ker(\varphi) = M$ .
- (3) Let  $M = \ker(\varphi)$ . Since  $\varphi$  is unbounded, then  $M \subset \overline{M}$ , meaning  $p : X/M \rightarrow X/\overline{M}$  defined by  $x + M \mapsto x + \overline{M}$  is well-defined with nontrivial kernel.

However, since  $\dim(X/M) = 1$ , we must have  $\ker(p) = X/M$ , implying that  $x + \overline{M} = 0_{X/\overline{M}}$  for all  $x \in X$ , meaning  $x \in \overline{M}$  for all  $x \in X$ , so  $X \subseteq \overline{M}$ .

□

For a vector space  $X$  over  $\mathbb{C}$ , we can consider  $X$  as a  $\mathbb{R}$ -vector space by simply “forgetting” the imaginary scalars. We can also consider the respective dual spaces over  $\mathbb{R}$  and  $\mathbb{C}$ , which we write as follows.

$$\begin{aligned}\mathcal{L}_{\mathbb{C}}(X, \mathbb{C}) &:= \{\varphi : X \rightarrow \mathbb{C} \mid \varphi \text{ is } \mathbb{C}\text{-linear}\} \\ \mathcal{L}_{\mathbb{R}}(X, \mathbb{R}) &:= \{\varphi : X \rightarrow \mathbb{R} \mid \varphi \text{ is } \mathbb{R}\text{-linear}\}.\end{aligned}$$

For  $\varphi \in \mathcal{L}_{\mathbb{C}}(X, \mathbb{C})$ , we define  $\operatorname{Re}(\varphi) : X \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  and  $\operatorname{Im}(\varphi) : X \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  to denote the real and imaginary parts of  $\varphi$ .

**Proposition:** Let  $X$  be a  $\mathbb{F}$ -vector space.

- (1) For  $\varphi \in \mathcal{L}_{\mathbb{C}}(X, \mathbb{C})$ , then  $u := \operatorname{Re}(\varphi)$  and  $v := \operatorname{Im}(\varphi)$ , and  $v(x) = -u(ix)$ , implying  $\varphi(x) = u(x) - iu(ix)$ .
- (2) For  $u \in \mathcal{L}_{\mathbb{R}}(X, \mathbb{R})$ , the map  $v : X \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  defined by  $v(x) := -u(ix)$  belongs to  $\mathcal{L}_{\mathbb{R}}(X, \mathbb{R})$ , and the map  $\varphi : X \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  defined by  $\varphi(x) = u(x) + iv(x)$  belongs to  $\mathcal{L}_{\mathbb{C}}(X, \mathbb{C})$ .
- (3) If  $(X, \|\cdot\|)$  is a normed space, with  $\varphi$  and  $u$  as in (1) or (2), then  $\|\varphi\| = \|u\|$ .

*Proof.*

- (1) For  $x, y \in X$  and  $t \in \mathbb{R}$ , we find

$$\begin{aligned}u(x + ty) &= \operatorname{Re}(\varphi(x + ty)) \\ &= \operatorname{Re}(\varphi(x) + t\varphi(y)) \\ &= \operatorname{Re}(\varphi(x)) + \operatorname{Re}(t\varphi(y)) \\ &= \operatorname{Re}(\varphi(x)) + t\operatorname{Re}(\varphi(y)) \\ &= u(x) + tu(y).\end{aligned}$$

For any  $z \in \mathbb{C}$ , we have  $\operatorname{Re}(iz) = -\operatorname{Im}(z)$ , meaning

$$\begin{aligned}v(x) &= \operatorname{Im}(\varphi(x)) \\ &= -\operatorname{Re}(i\varphi(x)) \\ &= -\operatorname{Re}(\varphi(ix)) \\ &= -u(ix).\end{aligned}$$

(2) Since  $u$  is  $\mathbb{R}$ -linear, so too are  $v$  and  $\varphi$ . Thus,

$$\begin{aligned}\varphi(ix) &= u(ix) - iu(-x) \\ &= u(ix) + iu(x) \\ &= i\varphi(x).\end{aligned}$$

Thus,  $\varphi$  is  $\mathbb{C}$ -linear.

(3) Note that  $|u(x)| = |\operatorname{Re}(\varphi(x))| \leq |\varphi(x)|$  for all  $x \in X$ , meaning  $\|u\| \leq \|\varphi\|$ .

For  $\varphi(x) \neq 0$ , we set  $\alpha = \frac{|\varphi(x)|}{\varphi(x)}$ , meaning  $|\alpha| = 1$  and  $\alpha\varphi(x) = |\varphi(x)|$ . Thus, we have

$$\begin{aligned}|\varphi(x)| &= \alpha\varphi(x) \\ &= \varphi(\alpha x) \\ &= \operatorname{Re}(\varphi(\alpha x)) \\ &= u(\alpha x) \\ &\leq \|u\| \|\alpha x\| \\ &= \|u\| \|x\|,\end{aligned}$$

meaning  $\|\varphi\| \leq \|u\|$ .

□

**Definition** (Minkowski Functional). Let  $X$  be an  $\mathbb{R}$ -vector space. A Minkowski functional on  $X$  is a map  $m : X \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  such that the following are satisfied for every  $x, y \in X$  and  $t \geq 0$ :

- (i)  $m(x + y) \leq m(x) + m(y)$ ;
- (ii)  $m(tx) = tm(x)$ .

Before we go into the Hahn–Banach theorems, we want to consider the problem of whether, for an  $\mathbb{F}$ -vector space  $X$  and a subspace  $E \subseteq X$ , if there is a linear functional  $\varphi : E \rightarrow \mathbb{F}$ , is there an extension to  $\psi : X \rightarrow \mathbb{F}$  such that  $\psi|_E = \varphi$ ?

The answer is yes. If we select a basis for  $E$ ,  $\mathcal{B}_0$ , we extend it to a basis for  $X$ ,  $\mathcal{B}$ , and define  $\psi_0 : X \rightarrow \mathbb{F}$  by sending  $b \mapsto \varphi(b)$  for  $b \in \mathcal{B}_0$ , and 0 for elements in  $\mathcal{B} \setminus \mathcal{B}_0$ .

We may be interested in extending *bounded* linear functionals as well, and if we can control the norms of these various extensions. This is where the Hahn–Banach theorems start to play a major role.

**Theorem** (Hahn–Banach–Minkowski): Let  $X$  be a real vector space with a Minkowski functional  $m : X \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ , and let  $E \subseteq X$  be a subspace. Suppose  $\varphi : E \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  is a linear functional with  $\varphi(y) \leq m(y)$  for all  $y \in E$ .

Then, there exists a linear functional  $\psi : X \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  such that  $\psi|_E = \varphi$  and  $\psi(x) \leq m(x)$  for all  $x \in X$ .

*Proof.* Consider the collection  $\mathcal{Z} = \{(Z, \phi)\}$  of all linear functionals that extend  $\varphi$  and are dominated by  $m$ . That is,  $E \subseteq Z \subseteq X$  are subspaces,  $\phi \in \mathcal{Z}'$  with  $\phi|_E = \varphi$ , and  $\phi(z) \leq m(z)$  for all  $z \in Z$ .

Note that  $(E, \varphi)$  is in  $\mathcal{Z}$ , meaning  $\mathcal{Z}$  is nonempty. We define an ordering on  $\mathcal{Z}$  by taking

$$(Z_1, \phi_1) \leq (Z_2, \phi_2)$$

if and only if  $Z_1 \subseteq Z_2$  and  $\phi_2|_{Z_1} = \phi_1$ .

Consider a chain in  $\mathcal{Z}$ ,  $\mathcal{C} = (Z_i, \phi_i)_{i \in I}$ . Let  $Y = \bigcup_{i \in I} Z_i$ . Since  $Z_i$  are totally ordered by inclusion, it is the case that  $Y$  is a subspace of  $X$ . We define  $\eta : Y \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  by  $\eta(x) = \phi_i(x)$  for  $x \in Z_i$ . Since  $Z_i$  are totally ordered

by inclusion, for  $Z_j \subseteq Z_i$ , it is the case that  $\phi_i|_{Z_j} = \phi_j$ , meaning  $(Y, \eta)$  is an upper bound for  $C$ .

By Zorn's lemma,<sup>ix</sup> there is a maximal element  $(Z_0, \phi_0)$ . We will now show that  $Z_0 = X$ .

Suppose there exists  $x_1 \in X \setminus Z_0$ . Consider the subspace

$$Z_1 = \{x + \lambda x_1 \mid \lambda \in \mathbb{R}, x \in Z_0\}.$$

Note that a vector in  $Z_1$  has a unique expression  $x + \lambda x_1$ , since  $x_1 \notin Z_0$ . Thus, the linear functional  $\phi_1 : Z_1 \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  defined by  $\phi_1(x + \lambda x_1) = \phi_0(x) + \lambda \alpha$  is well-defined. Note that  $E \subseteq Z_1$  and  $\phi_1|_E$  extends  $\phi$ , since  $\phi_0$  extends  $\phi$ . We need to find some  $\alpha$  such that  $\phi_1(z) \leq m(z)$  for all  $z \in Z_1$ , which will contradict the maximality of  $(Z_0, \phi_0)$ .

For any  $u, v \in Z_0$ , we have

$$\begin{aligned} \phi_0(u) + \phi_0(v) &= \phi_0(u+v) \\ &\leq m(u+v) \\ &= m(u - x_1 + v + x_1) \\ &\leq m(u - x_1) + m(v + x_1), \end{aligned}$$

meaning that for all  $u, v \in Z_0$ ,

$$\phi_0(u) - m(u - x_1) \leq m(v + x_1) - \phi_0(v).$$

We define

$$\alpha = \sup_{u \in Z_0} (\phi_0(u) - m(u - x_1)).$$

Then, for all  $u \in Z_0$ ,

$$m(u - x_1) \geq \phi_0(u) - \alpha,$$

meaning  $\alpha \leq m(v + x_1) - \phi_0(v)$  for all  $v \in Z_0$ , so

$$\phi_0(v) + \alpha \leq m(v + x_1).$$

Thus, for  $t = \pm 1$ , and  $z \in Z_0$ , we have

$$\phi_0(z) + t\alpha \leq m(z + tx_1)$$

Scaling by  $c > 0$ , we find

$$\phi_0(cz) + ct\alpha \leq m(cz + ct\alpha).$$

Setting  $c = |\lambda|$ ,  $z = \frac{1}{c}x$ , and  $t = \text{sgn}(\lambda)$ , we find

$$\phi_1(x) + \lambda\alpha \leq m(x + \lambda x_1),$$

thus contradicting maximality. □

**Theorem (Hahn–Banach Extension):** Let  $X$  be a normed vector space,  $E \subseteq X$  a subspace with a bounded linear functional  $\phi \in E^*$ . Then, there exists a continuous  $\psi \in X^*$  such that  $\|\phi\| = \|\psi\|$  and  $\psi|_E = \phi$ .

<sup>ix</sup>If  $P$  is a partially ordered set, and every totally ordered  $C \subseteq P$  admits an upper bound, then  $P$  has a maximal element.

*Proof.* Let  $m(x) = \|\varphi\| \|x\|$  be our desired Minkowski functional. Restricting our view to  $\mathbb{R}$ , we find

$$\begin{aligned}\varphi(x) &\leq |\varphi(x)| \\ &\leq \|\varphi\| \|x\| \\ &= m(x).\end{aligned}$$

Thus, there exists  $\psi \in X'$  such that  $\psi|_E = \varphi$  and  $\psi$  is dominated by  $m$  on  $X$ .

We must now show that  $\|\psi\| = \|\varphi\|$ . We have

$$\begin{aligned}\psi(x) &\leq m(x) \\ &\leq \|\varphi\|\end{aligned}$$

for all  $x \in B_X$ , and we also have

$$\begin{aligned}-\psi(x) &= \psi(-x) \\ &\leq \|\varphi\| \|x\| \\ &\leq \|\varphi\|.\end{aligned}$$

Thus,  $|\psi(x)| \leq \|\varphi\|$  for all  $x \in B_X$ . Additionally, since  $\|\varphi\| \leq \|\psi\|$  necessarily (as  $\psi$  is defined on a larger space than  $\varphi$ ), it is the case that  $\|\varphi\| = \|\psi\|$ .

Now, turning our attention to  $\mathbb{C}$ , we decompose  $\varphi = u + iv$ , where  $u = \operatorname{Re}(\varphi)$  and  $v(y) = -u(iy)$  for all  $y \in E$ . Then,  $u : E \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  is an  $\mathbb{R}$ -linear functional with  $\|u\| = \|\varphi\|$ . We extend  $u$  to  $U \in X^*$  such that  $\|U\| = \|u\| = \|\varphi\|$  with  $U|_E = u$ . Defining  $V(x) = -U(ix)$  for all  $x \in X$ , we find  $\psi = U + iV$  is a  $\mathbb{C}$ -linear functional with  $\|\psi\| = \|U\| = \|\varphi\|$ , and  $\psi|_E = \varphi$ .  $\square$

Thanks to the Hahn–Banach extension result, we can see that there are “enough” linear functionals in  $X^*$  for any normed vector space  $X$ .

**Theorem** (Hahn–Banach Separation): Let  $X$  be a normed vector space.

- (1) Given a nonzero  $x_0 \in X$ , there is a  $\varphi \in X^*$  with  $\|\varphi\| = 1$  and  $\varphi(x_0) = \|x_0\|$ . We call  $\varphi$  a norming functional.
- (2) Given a proper closed subspace  $E \subseteq X$  and  $x_0 \in X \setminus E$ , there is a  $\varphi \in X^*$  such that  $\varphi|_E = 0$ ,  $\|\varphi\| \leq 1$ , and  $\varphi(x_0) = \operatorname{dist}_E(x_0)$ .
- (3) The unit sphere in  $X^*$ ,  $S_{X^*}$ , separates the points of  $X$ .

*Proof.*

- (1) Let  $E = \operatorname{span}(x_0)$ , and  $\varphi : E \rightarrow \mathbb{F}$  defined by  $\varphi(\lambda x) = \lambda \|x\|$ . This is a linear functional, with

$$\begin{aligned}|\varphi(\lambda x)| &= |\lambda| \|x\| \\ &= \|\lambda x\|,\end{aligned}$$

meaning  $\|\varphi\| = 1$ . We can extend  $\varphi$  to  $\psi$  on  $X$  such that  $\psi|_E = \varphi$ , meaning  $\psi(x_0) = \varphi(x_0) = \|x_0\|$ .

- (2) There is a  $\psi \in (X/E)^*$  with  $\|\psi\| = 1$  and  $\psi(x_0 + E) = \|x_0 + E\| = \operatorname{dist}_E(x_0)$ . For the canonical quotient map  $\pi : X \rightarrow X/E$ , we set  $\varphi = \psi \circ \pi$ . Since  $\pi$  sends  $E$  to  $0 + E$ ,  $\varphi$  must send any element of  $E$  to 0.

Additionally,

$$\begin{aligned}\|\varphi\| &= \|\psi \circ \pi\| \\ &\leq \|\psi\| \|\pi\| \\ &= 1.\end{aligned}$$

Thus,  $\varphi$  is such that  $\varphi(x_0) = \operatorname{dist}_E(x_0)$ .

- (3) If  $x \neq y$  with  $x, y \in X$ , then  $x - y \neq 0$ , meaning there is  $\varphi \in S_{X^*}$  with  $\varphi(x - y) = \|x - y\| \neq 0$ , meaning  $\varphi(x) \neq \varphi(y)$ .

□

**Corollary:** Let  $X$  be a normed space. For every  $x \in X$ , we have

$$\begin{aligned} \sup_{\varphi \in B_{X^*}} |\varphi(x)| &= \sup_{\varphi \in S_{X^*}} |\varphi(x)| \\ &= \|x\|. \end{aligned}$$

**Proposition:** Let  $X$  be a normed vector space with separable dual  $X^*$ . Then, there is an isometric embedding  $X \hookrightarrow \ell_\infty$ .

*Proof.* Let  $(\varphi_n)_{n \geq 1}$  be a norm-dense subset of  $B_{X^*}$ . Consider the map

$$\mu : X \rightarrow \ell_\infty$$

with  $\mu(x) = (\varphi_n(x))_{n \geq 1}$  for  $x \in X$ . It is pretty clear that  $\mu$  is linear. Since  $\|\varphi_n\| \leq 1$  for each  $n \geq 1$ , we have

$$\begin{aligned} \|\mu(x)\|_\infty &= \sup_{n \geq 1} |\varphi_n(x)| \\ &\leq \sup_{n \geq 1} \|\varphi_n\| \|x\| \\ &\leq \|x\|. \end{aligned}$$

Suppose  $\|\mu(x)\|_\infty < \|x\|$  for some  $x \in B_X$ . Then, since  $x \neq 0$ , we set  $\delta = \|x\| - \|\mu(x)\|_\infty$ .

We can find  $\psi \in B_{X^*}$  with  $\psi(x) = \|x\|$ . Since  $(\varphi_n)_{n \geq 1}$  is norm-dense, there is  $m \in \mathbb{N}$  with

$$\|\psi - \varphi_m\| < \delta,$$

meaning

$$\begin{aligned} \|x\| &= \psi(x) \\ &\leq |\psi(x) - \varphi_m(x)| + |\varphi_m(x)| \\ &\leq \|\psi - \varphi_m\| \|x\| + \|\mu(x)\| \\ &< \delta + \|\mu(x)\|_\infty \\ &= \|x\|, \end{aligned}$$

which is a contradiction. Thus,  $\mu$  is isometric on the unit ball. □

**Definition.** Let  $X$  be a normed vector space with  $S \subseteq X$  and  $T \subseteq X^*$  subsets. We define the annihilator of  $S$  by

$$S^\perp = \{\varphi \in X^* \mid \varphi(x) = 0 \forall x \in S\},$$

and the pre-annihilator of  $T$  by

$${}^\perp T = \{x \in X \mid \varphi(x) = 0 \forall \varphi \in T\}.$$

**Exercise:** If  $X$  is a normed space and  $E \subset X$  is a proper subspace, show that  $E^\perp$  is nonzero. Also, show that  $S^\perp \subseteq X^*$  and  ${}^\perp T \subseteq X$  are norm-closed subspaces.

**Solution:**

- (a) For  $E \subset X$  a proper subspace, we know there exists some  $\phi \in X^*$  such that  $\|\phi\| \leq 1$  and  $\|x_0\| = \text{dist}_E(x_0)$  for some  $x_0 \in X$ , meaning  $E^\perp \neq \emptyset$ .

(b) For  $\varphi, \psi \in S^\perp$ , we have  $\varphi(x) = 0$  and  $\psi(x) = 0$  for all  $x \in S$ , meaning

$$\begin{aligned} (\varphi + \alpha\psi)(x) &= \varphi(x) + \alpha\psi(x) \\ &= 0, \end{aligned}$$

so  $\varphi + \alpha\psi \in S^\perp$ , so  $S$  is a subspace.

Additionally, for a sequence  $(\varphi_n)_{n \geq 1}$  in  $S^\perp$  such that  $(\varphi_n)_n \rightarrow \varphi \in X^*$ , we have  $\varphi_n(x) = 0$  for all  $x \in S$ , so  $\varphi(x) = 0$  for all  $x \in S$ .

(c) Similarly, for  $x, y \in {}^\perp T$ , we have

$$\begin{aligned} \varphi(x + \alpha y) &= \varphi(x) + \alpha\varphi(y) \\ &= 0, \end{aligned}$$

meaning  ${}^\perp T$  is a subspace. Similarly, for any sequence  $(x_n)_{n \geq 1}$  in  ${}^\perp T$  such that  $(x_n)_n \rightarrow x \in X$ , we have  $\varphi(x_n) = 0$  for all  $\varphi \in T$ , so  $\varphi(x) = 0$ .

**Exercise:** Let  $T : X \rightarrow Y$  be a bounded linear map between normed vector spaces. Show

$$(1) \text{ Ran}(T)^\perp = \ker(T^*)$$

$$(2) {}^\perp \text{Ran}(T) = \ker(T).$$

**Solution:** Note that  $T^* : Y^* \rightarrow X^*$  is defined by  $T^*(\varphi)(x) = \varphi(T(x))$ .

(1)

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Ran}(T)^\perp &= \{\varphi \in Y^* \mid \varphi(y) = 0, \forall y \in \text{Ran}(T)\} \\ &= \{\varphi \in Y^* \mid \varphi(T(x)) = 0, \forall x \in X\} \\ &= \{\varphi \in Y^* \mid T^*(\varphi)(x) = 0, \forall x \in X\} \\ &= \{\varphi \in Y^* \mid T^*(\varphi) = 0\} \\ &= \ker(T^*). \end{aligned}$$

(2)

$$\begin{aligned} {}^\perp \text{Ran}(T^*) &= \{x \in X \mid \psi(x) = 0, \forall \psi \in \text{Ran}(T^*)\} \\ &= \{x \in X \mid \varphi(T(x)) = 0, \forall \varphi \in Y^*\} \\ &= \{x \in X \mid T(x) = 0\} \\ &= \ker(T). \end{aligned}$$

**Corollary:** Let  $X$  be a normed vector space, and suppose  $S \subseteq X$  is a subset. Then,

$${}^\perp (S^\perp) = \overline{\text{span}(S)}.$$

*Proof.* Since  $S \subseteq {}^\perp (S^\perp)$ , and the latter is a norm-closed subspace, it is the case that  $Z = \overline{\text{span}(S)} \subseteq {}^\perp (S^\perp)$ .

Suppose there exists  $x_0 \in {}^\perp (S^\perp) \setminus Z$ . Then, we must have a  $\varphi \in X^*$  with  $\varphi|_Z = 0$  and  $\varphi(x_0) \neq 0$ , meaning  $\varphi \in S^\perp$ , so  $\varphi(x_0) = 0$ , which is a contradiction.  $\square$

Having used the Hahn–Banach theorems to understand some structure results on normed vector spaces, we now turn to an application to complex analysis.

**Definition.** Let  $X$  be a normed vector space and consider a function  $f : \Omega \rightarrow X$ , where  $\Omega \subseteq \mathbb{C}$  is open. We say  $f$  is differentiable at  $z \in \Omega$  if

$$\begin{aligned} f'(z) &= \lim_{w \rightarrow z} \frac{f(w) - f(z)}{w - z} \\ &= \lim_{\zeta \rightarrow 0} \frac{f(z + \zeta) - f(z)}{\zeta} \end{aligned}$$

exists in  $X$ . Here, the limit is defined through the norm of  $X$ .

If  $f'(z)$  exists for all  $z \in \Omega$ , we say  $f$  is holomorphic on  $\Omega$ . If  $\Omega = \mathbb{C}$ , then we say  $f$  is entire.



**Example.** Let  $A$  be a Banach algebra with  $a \in A$  fixed. The exponential map

$$\begin{aligned} f : \mathbb{C} &\rightarrow A \\ z &\mapsto \exp(az) \end{aligned}$$

is entire.

For any  $z \in \mathbb{C}$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} f'(z) &= \lim_{w \rightarrow 0} \frac{\exp(az + aw) - \exp(az)}{w} \\ &= \lim_{w \rightarrow 0} \frac{\exp(az) \exp(aw) - \exp(az)}{w} \\ &= \exp(az) \left( \lim_{w \rightarrow 0} \frac{\exp(aw) - 1}{w} \right) \\ &= a \exp(az). \end{aligned}$$

**Lemma:** Let  $X$  be a normed space, and suppose  $f : \Omega \rightarrow X$  is differentiable at  $z \in \Omega$ . If  $\varphi \in X^*$ , then  $\varphi \circ f$  is also differentiable at  $z$ . Similarly, if  $f$  is holomorphic on  $\Omega$ , then  $\varphi \circ f$  is holomorphic on  $\Omega$ .

*Proof.* By continuity and linearity of  $\varphi$ , we have

$$\begin{aligned} (\varphi \circ f)'(z) &= \lim_{w \rightarrow z} \frac{\varphi(f(w)) - \varphi(f(z))}{w - z} \\ &= \lim_{w \rightarrow z} \varphi \left( \frac{f(w) - f(z)}{w - z} \right) \\ &= \varphi \left( \lim_{w \rightarrow z} \frac{f(w) - f(z)}{w - z} \right) \\ &= \varphi(f'(z)). \end{aligned}$$

□

Liouville's theorem is a fundamental result in complex function theory which provides insight into the behavior of holomorphic functions.

**Theorem (Liouville's Theorem):** If  $f : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  is entire, and  $\sup_{z \in \mathbb{C}} |f(z)| < \infty$ , then there is some  $z_0 \in \mathbb{C}$  such that  $f(z) = z_0$  for all  $z \in \mathbb{C}$ .

A proof of Liouville's theorem is presented below.

*Proof.* Let  $f$  be holomorphic and bounded on  $\mathbb{C}$ . Then,  $f$  is analytic, meaning

$$f(z) = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} a_k z^k,$$

and Cauchy's integral formula gives

$$\begin{aligned} a_k &= \frac{f^{(k)}(0)}{k!} \\ &= \frac{1}{2\pi i} \oint_{C_r} \frac{f(w)}{w^{k+1}} dw, \end{aligned}$$

where  $C_r$  denotes a circle of radius  $r$  about the origin. Since  $f$  is bounded on  $\mathbb{C}$ ,  $f$  is bounded on  $C_r$ . Thus, we have

$$|a_k| = \frac{1}{2\pi} \left| \oint_{C_r} \frac{f(w)}{w^{k+1}} dw \right|$$

$$\begin{aligned}
&\leq \frac{1}{2\pi} \oint_{C_r} \left| \frac{f(w)}{w^{k+1}} \right| |dw| \\
&\leq \frac{1}{2\pi} \oint_{C_r} \frac{M}{r^{k+1}} |dw| \\
&= \frac{M}{2\pi r^{k+1}} \oint_{C_r} |dw| \\
&= \frac{M}{r^k}.
\end{aligned}$$

Since  $r$  was arbitrary, this means  $a_k = 0$  for all  $k \geq 1$ , meaning  $f(z) = a_0$  for all  $z$ .  $\square$

**Corollary:** Let  $X$  be a normed space. If  $f : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow X$  is entire and bounded, then there is  $x_0 \in X$  such that  $f(z) = x_0$  for all  $z \in \mathbb{C}$ .

*Proof.* Suppose this is not the case. Then, there are  $z_1, z_2 \in \mathbb{C}$  such that  $f(z_1) \neq f(z_2)$ . Thus, there is  $\varphi \in X^*$  such that  $\varphi(f(z_1)) \neq \varphi(f(z_2))$ . Additionally,  $\varphi \circ f : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  is entire, and

$$\begin{aligned}
\sup_{z \in \mathbb{C}} |\varphi \circ f| &= \sup_{z \in \mathbb{C}} |\varphi(f(z))| \\
&\leq \sup_{z \in \mathbb{C}} \|\varphi\| |f(z)| \\
&< \infty,
\end{aligned}$$

so  $\varphi \circ f$  is constant. However, this contradicts  $\varphi(f(z_1)) \neq \varphi(f(z_2))$ .  $\square$

## Duality

If  $X$  is a normed vector spaces, we know that the continuous dual space,  $X^* = \mathcal{B}(X, \mathbb{C})$ , is a Banach space as  $\mathbb{C}$  is complete. This section will be focused on understanding dual spaces and their operators.

### Completions and the Double Dual

**Definition** (Double Dual). We define  $X^{**} = \mathcal{B}(X^*, \mathbb{C})$  to be the double dual of  $X$ .

**Remark:**  $X^{**}$  is complete.

**Proposition:** Let  $X$  be a normed vector space. If  $x \in X$ , the map

$$\begin{aligned}
\hat{x} : X^* &\rightarrow \mathbb{F} \\
\hat{x}(\varphi) &= \varphi(x)
\end{aligned}$$

is linear and bounded with  $\hat{x}_{\text{op}} = \|x\|$ . The map  $\iota_X : X \hookrightarrow X^{**}$  with  $x \mapsto \hat{x}$ , is a linear isometry known as the canonical embedding.

*Proof.* First, we show that  $\hat{x}$  is linear. Let  $\varphi, \psi \in X^*$  and  $\alpha \in \mathbb{F}$ . Then,

$$\begin{aligned}
\hat{x}(\varphi + \alpha\psi) &= (\varphi + \alpha\psi)(x) \\
&= \varphi(x) + \alpha\psi(x) \\
&= \hat{x}(\varphi) + \alpha\hat{x}(\psi).
\end{aligned}$$

We can also see, by the Hahn–Banach Separation theorem,

$$\begin{aligned}
\|\hat{x}\|_{\text{op}} &= \sup_{\varphi \in B_{X^*}} |\hat{x}(\varphi)| \\
&= \sup_{\varphi \in B_{X^*}} |\varphi(x)|
\end{aligned}$$

$$= \|x\|.$$

Now, we will show that  $\iota_X$  is linear. Let  $x, y \in X, \lambda \in \mathbb{F}$ . Then,

$$\begin{aligned}\iota_X(x + \lambda y) &= \widehat{x + \lambda y} \\ &= \widehat{x} + \widehat{\lambda y} \\ &= \widehat{x} + \lambda \widehat{y} \\ &= \iota_X(x) + \lambda \iota_X(y).\end{aligned}$$

□

**Definition** (Completion of a Metric Space). For a metric space  $X$ , the completion  $\widetilde{X}$  is a complete metric space where  $X \subseteq \widetilde{X}$  and  $\overline{X} = \widetilde{X}$ .

Since  $X^{**}$  is complete, we can make a completion of  $X$  using the canonical embedding.

**Definition** (Norm Completion). Let  $X$  be a normed vector space. A norm completion of  $X$  is a pair  $(Z, j)$ , with  $Z$  is a Banach space and  $j : X \hookrightarrow Z$  is a linear isometry such that  $\overline{\text{Ran}(j)} = Z$ .

First, we show the existence of a norm completion. Then, we will show that norm completions are unique up to isometric isomorphism.

**Proposition:** Let  $X$  be a normed vector space. Set  $\widetilde{X} = \overline{\iota_X(X)}^{\|\cdot\|_{\text{op}}} \subseteq X^{**}$ , where  $\iota_X$  is the canonical embedding. The pair,  $(\widetilde{X}, \iota_X)$ , is a completion of  $X$ .

*Proof.* Since  $X^{**}$  is a Banach space, the closed subspace  $\overline{\iota_X(X)}^{\|\cdot\|_{\text{op}}}$  is complete. Since  $\iota_X$  is an isometric isomorphism, and  $\overline{\text{Ran}(\iota_X)} = \overline{\iota_X(X)}^{\|\cdot\|_{\text{op}}}$ . □

**Note:** If  $X$  is a Banach space,  $\text{Ran}(\iota_X)$  is already norm-closed, since  $X$  is complete, so  $\widetilde{X} = \iota_X(X) \cong X$ .

To show that completions are unique up to isometric isomorphism, we need to be able to extend bounded linear operators from normed spaces to their completions that preserve the operator norm.

**Proposition:** Let  $X$  be a normed space with  $E \subseteq X$  a linear subspace.

- (1) The closure  $\overline{E}$  is a closed linear subspace.
- (2) If  $T : E \rightarrow Z$  is a bounded linear map into a Banach space  $Z$ , then there is a unique bounded linear map  $\widetilde{T} : \overline{E} \rightarrow Z$  such that  $\widetilde{T}|_E = T$  and  $\|\widetilde{T}\|_{\text{op}} = \|T\|_{\text{op}}$ . If  $T$  is an isometry, then so is  $\widetilde{T}$ , and  $\text{Ran}(\widetilde{T}) = \overline{\text{Ran}(T)}$ .

*Proof.*

- (1) Let  $(x_n)_n \rightarrow x$  and  $(y_n)_n \rightarrow y$  in  $\overline{E}$ . Then,  $x + \alpha y = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} (x_n)_n + \alpha \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} (y_n)_n$ , or  $x + \alpha y = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} (x_n + \alpha y_n)_n$ , meaning  $x + \alpha y \in \overline{E}$ .
- (2) Let  $x \in \overline{E}$ . There is a sequence  $(x_n)_n$  in  $E$  with  $(x_n)_n \rightarrow x$ . Then,

$$\begin{aligned}\|T(x_n) - T(x_m)\| &= \|T(x_n - x_m)\| \\ &\leq \|T\| \|x_n - x_m\|.\end{aligned}$$

Thus,  $(T(x_n))_n$  is a Cauchy sequence in  $Z$ , meaning it converges to  $z \in Z$ .

If  $(x'_n)_n$  is a different sequence in  $E$  with  $(x'_n)_n \rightarrow x$ , then similarly,  $(T(x'_n))_n$  is Cauchy in  $Z$  that converges to  $z'$ . We have

$$z = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} T(x_n)$$

$$\begin{aligned}
&= \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} (T(x_n) - T(x'_n) + T(x'_n)) \\
&= \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} (T(x_n) - T(x'_n)) + \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} T(x'_n) \\
&= z'.
\end{aligned}$$

We define  $\tilde{T} : \bar{E} \rightarrow Z$  with  $\tilde{T}(x) := \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} T(x_n)$  for any sequence  $(x_n)_n$  in  $E$  that converges to  $x$ .

Linearity of  $\tilde{T}$  follows from the linearity of limits.

We now verify that  $\|\tilde{T}\|_{\text{op}} = \|T\|_{\text{op}}$ .

$$\begin{aligned}
\|\tilde{T}(x)\| &= \left\| \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} T(x_n) \right\| \\
&= \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \|T(x_n)\| \\
&\leq \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \|T\| \|x_n\| \\
&= \|T\| \|x\|,
\end{aligned}$$

implying that  $\|\tilde{T}\|_{\text{op}} \leq \|T\|_{\text{op}}$ . Additionally, since  $\tilde{T}$  is defined on a larger space than  $T$ ,  $\|T\|_{\text{op}} \leq \|\tilde{T}\|_{\text{op}}$ . Uniqueness follows from the fact that two continuous functions defined on a dense subset agree on the whole set.

Additionally, if  $T$  is an isometry, then

$$\begin{aligned}
\|\tilde{T}(x)\| &= \left\| \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} T(x_n) \right\| \\
&= \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \|T(x_n)\| \\
&= \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \|x_n\| \\
&= \|x\|.
\end{aligned}$$

By definition, we can see that  $\text{Ran}(T) \subseteq \text{Ran}(\tilde{T}) \subseteq \overline{\text{Ran}(T)}$ . Since  $\tilde{T}$  is an isometry, its range is closed, so we have  $\text{Ran}(\tilde{T}) = \overline{\text{Ran}(T)}$ .

□

**Theorem:** Let  $X$  be a normed vector space. There is a Banach space  $\tilde{X}$  and a linear isometry  $j : X \hookrightarrow \tilde{X}$  such that  $\overline{j(X)} = \tilde{X}$ . If  $(Z, k)$  is any other completion of  $X$ , then  $Z \cong \tilde{X}$  are isometrically isomorphic.

*Proof.* We have shown existence with the earlier proposition.

Let  $(Z_1, j_1)$  and  $(Z_2, j_2)$  be norm completions of  $X$ . Consider the mappings  $T : \text{Ran}(j_1) \rightarrow Z_2$  and  $S : \text{Ran}(j_2) \rightarrow Z_1$  given by

$$\begin{aligned}
T(j_1(x)) &= j_2(x) \\
S(j_2(x)) &= j_1(x).
\end{aligned}$$

Since  $j_1$  and  $j_2$  are isometries, then  $T$  and  $S$  are well-defined linear isometries. Thus,  $T$  and  $S$  extend to isometries  $T : Z_1 \rightarrow Z_2$  and  $S : Z_2 \rightarrow Z_1$ .

We have  $S \circ T(z) = z$  for all  $z \in \text{Ran}(j_1)$ , meaning  $S \circ T = \text{id}_{Z_1}$ , and similarly,  $T \circ S = \text{id}_{Z_2}$ . Thus,  $Z_1 \cong Z_2$  are isometrically isomorphic. □

**Corollary:** Let  $Z$  be a Banach space with  $X \subseteq Z$  a subspace. Then,  $\tilde{X} \cong \bar{X}$ .

**Remark:** For a normed space  $(X, \|\cdot\|)$ , we let  $\bar{X}^{\|\cdot\|}$  denote the norm completion  $\bar{X}$ , and  $X \subseteq \bar{X}^{\|\cdot\|}$  is considered as a dense subspace.

We are now able to extend bounded linear operators to the completion.

**Proposition:** Let  $X$  and  $Y$  be normed spaces. If  $T \in \mathcal{B}(X, Y)$ , there is a unique  $\tilde{T} \in \mathcal{B}(\tilde{X}, \tilde{Y})$  such that  $\tilde{T} \circ \iota_X = \iota_Y \circ T$ . The following diagram commutes.

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \tilde{X} & \xrightarrow{\tilde{T}} & \tilde{Y} \\ \iota_X \uparrow & & \uparrow \iota_Y \\ X & \xrightarrow{T} & Y \end{array} \quad \text{Additionally, } \|T\|_{\text{op}} = \|\tilde{T}\|_{\text{op}}. \text{ If } T \text{ is an isometry, then so is } \tilde{T}, \text{ and if } T \text{ is an isometric}$$

isomorphism, so is  $\tilde{T}$ .

*Proof.* Define  $T_0 : \text{Ran}(\iota_X) \rightarrow \tilde{Y}$  by  $T_0(\iota_X(x)) = \iota_Y(T(x))$ . Since  $\iota_X$  is injective,  $T_0$  is well-defined and linear. Additionally, since  $\iota_X$  and  $\iota_Y$  are isometries, for every  $x \in X$ , we have

$$\begin{aligned} \|T_0(\iota_X(x))\| &= \|\iota_Y(T(x))\| \\ &= \|T(x)\| \\ &\leq \|T\|_{\text{op}} \|x\| \\ &= \|T\|_{\text{op}} \|\iota_X(x)\|, \end{aligned}$$

meaning  $T_0$  is bounded. Thus,  $T_0$  extends to  $\tilde{T}$  defined on  $\overline{\text{Ran}(\iota_X)} = \tilde{X}$ , such that  $\|\tilde{T}\|_{\text{op}} = \|T_0\|_{\text{op}} \leq \|T\|_{\text{op}}$ .

It is also the case that  $\|T\|_{\text{op}} \leq \|\tilde{T}\|_{\text{op}}$  since  $\tilde{T}$  is an extension.

Thus, the diagram commutes. Uniqueness follows from the fact that  $\text{Ran}(\iota_X) \subseteq \tilde{X}$  is dense.

If  $T$  is isometric, then

$$\begin{aligned} \|T_0(\iota_X(x))\| &= \|\iota_Y(T(x))\| \\ &= \|T(x)\| \\ &= \|x\| \\ &= \|\iota_X(x)\|, \end{aligned}$$

meaning  $T_0$  is an isometry. Thus, the extension to  $\tilde{T} : \tilde{X} \rightarrow \tilde{Y}$  is also an isometry.

If  $T$  is an isometric isomorphism, then

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Ran}(\tilde{T}) &= \overline{\text{Ran}(T_0)} \\ &= \overline{\iota_Y(\text{Ran}(T))} \\ &= \overline{\iota_Y(Y)} \\ &= \tilde{Y}, \end{aligned}$$

meaning  $\tilde{T}$  is an isomorphism as well. □

**Corollary:** Let  $X$  be a vector space and  $Y$  a Banach space. Suppose there is an injective linear map  $T : X \rightarrow Y$ , and we write  $\|\cdot\|_X$  to be the norm on  $X$  induced by  $T$ , defined by  $\|x\|_X = \|T(x)\|_Y$ . If  $Z := \overline{T(X)}$  is the closure of the range of  $T$  in  $Y$ , then  $\tilde{X} \cong Z$ .

*Proof.* By the definition of the norm,  $T : X \rightarrow Z$  is an isometry into the Banach space  $Z$ , and so extends to  $\tilde{T} : \tilde{X} \rightarrow Z$ , where  $\tilde{T}|_X = T$ . Since  $T$  is an isometry and  $\tilde{X}$  is complete, the range  $\tilde{T}(\tilde{X})$  is closed in  $Y$ , meaning

$$\begin{aligned} T(X) &\subseteq \tilde{T}(\tilde{X}) \\ \overline{T(X)} &\subseteq \tilde{T}(\tilde{X}). \end{aligned}$$

Thus,  $\tilde{T}$  is surjective. □

## Dual Spaces

**Definition.** A normed vector space  $X$  is called a dual space if there is a normed vector space  $Z$  such that  $Z^* \cong X$  are isometrically isomorphic. The space  $Z$  is known as the pre-dual of  $X$ .

It is generally not easy to find whether or not  $X$  is a dual space. However, we can attempt to find some dual spaces that for various Banach spaces.

A linear map is uniquely defined on the Hamel basis of its domain. However, when dealing with infinite-dimensional Banach spaces, we know that they cannot have a countable Hamel basis, which makes working with them very difficult. However, we can use a different notion of basis to assist us in our study.

**Definition.** Let  $X$  be a Banach space over  $\mathbb{F}$ . A sequence  $(e_n)_n$  in  $X$  is called a Schauder basi for  $X$  if every  $x \in X$  admits a unique sequence  $(\lambda_n)_n$  in  $\mathbb{F}$  such that

$$x = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \lambda_n e_n$$

is a norm convergent sum in  $X$ .

**Proposition:** The canonical coordinate vectors  $(e_n)_n^*$  is a Schauder basis for  $c_0$  and  $\ell_p$  for  $1 \leq p < \infty$ .

*Proof.* We will show this for  $c_0$ . Let  $x \in c_0$ ,  $x = (\lambda_n)_n$ . For each  $N \geq 1$ , define

$$x_N = \sum_{n=1}^N \lambda_n e_n.$$

Whenever  $N \geq M$ , we have

$$\begin{aligned} \|x_N - x_M\|_{\infty} &= \left\| \sum_{n=M+1}^N \lambda_n e_n \right\|_{\infty} \\ &= \sup_{M+1 \leq n \leq N} |\lambda_n|. \end{aligned}$$

Since  $(\lambda_n)_n \rightarrow 0$  as  $x \in c_0$ , we have  $\|x_N - x_M\|_{\infty}$  is small for large  $N, M$ . Thus,  $(x_N)_N$  is Cauchy.

By the completeness of  $c_0$ , we know that  $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \lambda_n e_n$  thus converges. Since

$$\begin{aligned} \|x - x_N\|_{\infty} &= \sup_{n \geq N+1} |\lambda_n| \\ &\rightarrow 0, \end{aligned}$$

we have  $x = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \lambda_n e_n$ . Thus, we have shown existence.

---

\*The sequence with 1 at position  $n$  and 0 everywhere else.

To show uniqueness, let  $\varphi_k \in c_0^*$  be given by  $\varphi_k((z_n)_n) = z_k$  for each  $k \in \mathbb{N}$ . Suppose that there exist two sequences of coefficients  $(\lambda_n)_n$  and  $(\mu_n)_n$  such that

$$\begin{aligned} x &= \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \lambda_n e_n \\ &= \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \mu_n e_n. \end{aligned}$$

For each  $k$ , since  $\varphi_k$  is continuous, we have

$$\begin{aligned} \lambda_k &= \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \lambda_n \varphi_k(e_n) \\ &= \varphi_k\left(\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \lambda_n e_n\right) \\ &= \varphi_k(x) \\ &= \varphi_k\left(\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \mu_n e_n\right) \\ &= \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \mu_n \varphi_k(e_n) \\ &= \mu_k. \end{aligned}$$

Thus,  $(\lambda_n)_n = (\mu_n)_n$ . □

**Exercise:** Every Banach space that admits a Schauder basis is separable. Conclude that the canonical sequence of coordinate vectors  $(e_n)_n$  is not a Schauder basis for  $\ell_\infty$ .

**Solution:** Let  $X$  admit a Schauder basis  $(e_n)_n$ , and let  $(\lambda_n)_n$  be a sequence of coefficients in  $\mathbb{C}$  such that

$$x = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \lambda_n e_n.$$

Define

$$E = \left\{ \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \alpha_k e_k \mid \alpha_k \in \mathbb{C}_Q \right\}.$$

Since the coefficients in  $E$  are defined over  $\mathbb{C}_Q$ ,  $E$  is countable. We claim that  $\overline{E} = X$ .

Let  $\varepsilon > 0$ . Since  $\overline{\mathbb{C}_Q} = \mathbb{C}$ , we find  $\alpha_1 \in \mathbb{C}_Q$  such that  $\|(\alpha_1 - \lambda_1)e_1\| < \frac{\varepsilon}{2}$ , and inductively find  $\alpha_k \in \mathbb{C}_Q$  such that

$$\|(\alpha_k - \lambda_k)e_k\| < \frac{\varepsilon}{2^k}.$$

Define  $\mu = \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \alpha_k e_k$ . Then,

$$\begin{aligned} \|\mu - x\| &= \left\| \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} (\alpha_k - \lambda_k) e_k \right\| \\ &\leq \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \|(\alpha_k - \lambda_k) e_k\| \\ &< \varepsilon. \end{aligned}$$

Since  $\ell_\infty$  is not separable,<sup>x1</sup> it is the case that  $\ell_\infty$  does not admit a Schauder basis.

<sup>x1</sup>The set  $E = \{(\alpha_k)_k \mid \alpha_k \in \{0, 1\}\}$  under  $\|\cdot\|_\infty$  has the discrete metric but is uncountable (hence, not separable), but any subset of a separable set is necessarily separable.

We can now find some dual spaces.

**Proposition:** The dual space of  $c_0$  is isometrically isomorphic to  $\ell_1$ . That is,  $c_0^* \cong \ell_1$ .

*Proof.* Let  $\theta : \ell_1 \rightarrow c_0^*$  be defined by  $\theta(\lambda)(z) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \lambda_n z_n$ , where  $\lambda = (\lambda_n)_n \in \ell_1$  and  $z = (z_n)_n \in c_0$ . We will show that  $\theta$  is an isometric isomorphism.

We start by showing that  $\theta$  is well-defined. To see this, note that

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} |\lambda_n z_n| &\leq \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} |\lambda_n| \|z\|_{\infty} \\ &= \|\lambda\|_1 \|z\|_{\infty}, \end{aligned}$$

which is finite since  $\lambda \in \ell_1$  and  $z \in \ell_{\infty}$ . Thus,  $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \lambda_n z_n$  converges absolutely, and thus is convergent.

For each  $\lambda \in \ell_1$ , the map  $\theta(\lambda) : c_0 \rightarrow \mathbb{F}$  is linear. We now need to show that  $\theta$  is bounded.

Let  $z \in c_0$ . Then,

$$\begin{aligned} |\theta(\lambda)(z)| &= \left| \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \lambda_n z_n \right| \\ &\leq \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} |\lambda_n| |z_n| \\ &\leq \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} |\lambda_n| \|z\|_{\infty} \\ &= \|\lambda\|_1 \|z\|_{\infty}. \end{aligned}$$

Thus,  $\|\theta(\lambda)\|_{\text{op}} \leq \|\lambda\|_1$ , so  $\theta(\lambda) \in c_0^*$ .

The map  $\lambda \mapsto \theta(\lambda)$  is linear. Now, we show that  $\theta$  is an isometry. We know that  $\|\theta(\lambda)\|_{\text{op}} \leq \|\lambda\|_1$ . For  $(\lambda_n)_n \in \ell_1$ , we know that

$$z_{\lambda} = (\text{sgn}(\lambda_1), \text{sgn}(\lambda_1), \dots, \text{sgn}(\lambda_n))$$

is a member of  $B_{c_0}$ , as its nonzero terms have modulus at most 1. Here,  $\text{sgn}(z)$  is the complex number of modulus 1 defined by  $\text{sgn}(z) = \frac{|z|}{z}$ . Thus,

$$\begin{aligned} \|\theta(\lambda)\|_{\text{op}} &\geq |\theta(\lambda)(z_1)| \\ &= \left| \sum_{i=1}^n \lambda_i \text{sgn}(\lambda_i) \right| \\ &= \sum_{i=1}^n |\lambda_i|. \end{aligned}$$

Sending  $n \rightarrow \infty$ , we have  $\|\theta(\lambda)\|_{\text{op}} \geq \|\lambda\|_1$ . Thus,  $\theta$  is an isometry.

Finally, we must show that  $\theta$  is onto. Let  $\varphi \in c_0^*$ , and let  $\lambda_n = \varphi(e_n)$ . We set  $\omega_n = \text{sgn}(\varphi(e_n))$ . Then,

$$\sum_{n=1}^N |\lambda_n| = \sum_{n=1}^N |\varphi(e_n)|$$



$$\begin{aligned}
&= \sum_{n=1}^N \varphi_n \operatorname{sgn}(\varphi(e_n)) \\
&= \sum_{n=1}^N \varphi_n(e_n \omega_n) \\
&= \varphi\left(\sum_{n=1}^N \omega_n e_n\right) \\
&\leq \|\varphi\|_{\text{op}} \left\| \sum_{n=1}^N \omega_n e_n \right\|_{\infty} \\
&\leq \|\varphi\|_{\text{op}}.
\end{aligned}$$

Sending  $N \rightarrow \infty$ , we find that  $(\lambda_n)_n \in \ell_1$ . For an arbitrary  $(z_n)_n \in c_0$ , we have

$$\begin{aligned}
\varphi(z) &= \varphi\left(\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} z_n e_n\right) \\
&= \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} z_n \varphi(e_n) \\
&= \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} z_n \lambda_n \\
&= \theta(\lambda)(z),
\end{aligned}$$

thus meaning  $\varphi$  and  $\theta(\lambda)$  agree on an arbitrary member of  $c_0$ .  $\square$

**Remark:** What made this problem so much easier than it might have been is the fact that since  $c_0$  has a Schauder basis, we could define how  $\varphi \in c_0^*$  behaved entirely through its action on the basis elements. This is similar to how we can find properties of linear maps in linear algebra by finding their actions on the Hamel bases of the vector space.

**Exercise:** Consider the map  $\phi : \ell_1 \rightarrow \ell_{\infty}^*$  defined by  $\phi(\lambda)(z) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \lambda_n z_n$  for  $\lambda = (\lambda_n)_n \in \ell_1$  and  $z = (z_n)_n \in \ell_{\infty}$ . Prove that  $\phi$  is a linear isometry, but  $\phi$  is *not* onto.

**Solution:** A similar method to the proof that  $c_0^* \cong \ell_1$  gives  $\phi$  is an isometry. We will replicate it here.

First, we show that  $\phi$  is bounded and well-defined.

$$\begin{aligned}
|\phi(\lambda)(z)| &= \left| \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \lambda_n z_n \right| \\
&\leq \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} |\lambda_n z_n| \\
&\leq \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} |\lambda_n| \|z\|_{\infty} \\
&= \|\lambda\|_1 \|z\|_{\infty} \\
&< \infty.
\end{aligned}$$

Thus,  $\|\phi(\lambda)\|_{\text{op}} \leq \|\lambda\|_1$ , so  $\phi$  is bounded. It is also clear that  $\phi$  is linear in  $\lambda$  and in  $z$ . Similarly, for  $\lambda = (\lambda_n)_n \in \ell_1$ , we define

$$\begin{aligned}
z_{\lambda} &= (\operatorname{sgn}(\lambda_1), \dots, \operatorname{sgn}(\lambda_n), 0, 0, \dots) \\
&\in B_{c_0}.
\end{aligned}$$

Thus,

$$\|\phi(\lambda)\|_{\text{op}} \geq |\phi(\lambda)(z_{\lambda})|$$

$$= \sum_{k=1}^n |\lambda_k|,$$

meaning  $\|\phi(\lambda)\|_{\text{op}} \geq \|\lambda\|_1$ , so  $\phi$  is an isometry.

In particular,  $\phi$  is an isometric isomorphism from  $\ell_1$  to  $c_0^* \subset \ell_\infty^*$ , so  $\phi$  cannot be onto  $\ell_\infty^*$ .

**Proposition:** The dual of  $\ell_1$  is isometrically isomorphic to  $\ell_\infty$ .

*Proof.* Let  $\theta : \ell_\infty \rightarrow \ell_1^*$  be defined by  $\theta(z)(\lambda) = \sum_{n=1}^\infty z_n \lambda_n$  for  $z = (z_n)_n \in \ell_\infty$  and  $(\lambda_n)_n \in \ell_1$ .

We can see that  $\theta$  is well-defined with  $\|\theta(z)\|_{\text{op}} \leq \|z\|_\infty$  by a similar reasoning to the case of  $\theta : \ell_1 \rightarrow c_0^*$ . Additionally, since

$$\begin{aligned} \|\theta(z)\|_{\text{op}} &\geq |\theta(z)(e_n)| \\ &= |z_n| \end{aligned}$$

for every  $n \geq 1$ , we have  $\|z\|_\infty \leq \|\theta(z)\|_{\text{op}}$ , meaning  $\theta$  is an isometry.

Suppose  $\varphi \in \ell_1^*$ . Set  $z_n = \varphi(e_n)$ . Note that  $z \in \ell_\infty$  since  $|z_n| = |\varphi(e_n)| \leq \|\varphi\|_{\text{op}}$  for all  $n \geq 1$ . For  $\lambda = (\lambda_n)_n \in \ell_1$ , then  $\lambda = \sum_{n=1}^\infty \lambda_n e_n$  is convergent in the 1-norm, as

$$\begin{aligned} \left\| \sum_{n=1}^\infty \lambda_n e_n \right\| &\leq \sum_{n=1}^\infty \|\lambda_n e_n\| \\ &= \sum_{n=1}^\infty |\lambda_n| \|e_n\| \\ &= \sum_{n=1}^\infty |\lambda_n| \\ &< \infty. \end{aligned}$$

Thus,

$$\begin{aligned} \varphi(\lambda) &= \varphi\left(\sum_{n=1}^\infty \lambda_n e_n\right) \\ &= \sum_{n=1}^\infty \lambda_n \varphi(e_n) \\ &= \sum_{n=1}^\infty \lambda_n z_n \\ &= \theta(z)(\lambda). \end{aligned}$$

□

This result can be generalized to  $L_p$  spaces, which are spaces of measurable functions satisfying some integration property.

**Theorem:** Let  $(\Omega, \mathcal{M}, \mu)$  be a measure space.

- (1) If  $\mu$  is a  $\sigma$ -finite measure, and  $p, q \in (1, \infty)$  satisfying  $p^{-1} + q^{-1} = 1$ , then the map  $L_q(\Omega, \mu) \rightarrow L_p(\Omega, \mu)^*$  given by  $f \mapsto \varphi_f$ , with

$$\varphi_f(g) = \int_{\Omega} gf \, d\mu,$$

is an isometric isomorphism.

(2) If  $\mu$  is semi-finite, then  $L_\infty \rightarrow L_1(\Omega, \mu)^*$  given by  $f \mapsto \varphi_f$  is an isometric isomorphism.

We will now turn our attention to spaces of continuous functions. Let  $\Omega$  be a locally compact Hausdorff space. We want to understand  $C_0(\Omega)^*$ , the space of bounded linear functionals on  $C_0(\Omega)$ .

Note that  $C_0(\Omega)$  is a  $*$ -algebra, and admits a cone of positive elements,  $C_0(\Omega)_+$ .<sup>xiii</sup> We start by understanding the properties of positive linear functionals.

**Definition.** Let  $\Omega$  be a locally compact Hausdorff space.

(1) A linear functional  $\varphi : C_0(\Omega) \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  is called positive if  $\varphi(f) \geq 0$  whenever  $f \in C_0(\Omega)_+$ .

(2) A positive linear functional  $\varphi : C_0(\Omega) \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  is called faithful if

$$\ker(\varphi) \cap C_0(\Omega)_+ = \{0\}.$$

(3) A state on  $C_0(\Omega)$  is a positive linear functional  $\varphi \in C_0(\Omega)'$  with  $\|\varphi\|_{\text{op}} = 1$ . The collection of states

$$\begin{aligned} S(C_0(\Omega)) &= \{\varphi \in C_0(\Omega)^* \mid \varphi \text{ is a state}\} \\ &\subseteq B_{C_0(\Omega)^*}. \end{aligned}$$

is called the state space of  $\Omega$ , which we abbreviate  $S(\Omega)$ .

**Lemma:** Let  $\Omega$  be a locally compact Hausdorff space, and suppose  $\varphi : C_0(\Omega) \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  is a positive linear functional.

(1) If  $h \in C_0(\Omega, \mathbb{R})$ , then  $\varphi(h) \in \mathbb{R}$ .

(2) If  $h \leq k$  in  $C_0(\Omega, \mathbb{R})$ , then  $\varphi(h) \leq \varphi(k)$ .

(3) If  $f \in C_0(\Omega)$ , then  $\varphi(f^*) = \overline{\varphi(f)}$ .

*Proof.*

(1) We write  $h = h_+ - h_-$ , and see that  $\varphi(h) = \varphi(h_+) - \varphi(h_-) \in \mathbb{R}$ .

(2) If  $h \leq k$  in  $C_0(\Omega, \mathbb{R})$ , then  $k - h \geq 0$ , so  $\varphi(k - h) \geq 0$ , so  $\varphi(h) \leq \varphi(k)$ .

(3) We write  $f$  as the Cartesian decomposition,  $f = h + ik$ , where  $h, k \in C_0(\Omega, \mathbb{R})$ . Thus,

$$\begin{aligned} \varphi(f^*) &= \varphi(h - ik) \\ &= \varphi(h) - i\varphi(k) \\ &= \overline{\varphi(h) + i\varphi(k)} \\ &= \overline{\varphi(f)}. \end{aligned}$$

□

**Proposition:** If  $\varphi : C_0(\Omega) \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  is positive and linear, then  $\varphi$  is bounded.

*Proof.* Let

$$M = \sup \{ \varphi(f) \mid f \in C_0(\Omega)_+, \|f\|_{\text{u}} \leq 1 \}.$$

We claim that  $M$  is finite. If  $M = \infty$  then for each  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ , there exists  $f_n \in C_0(\Omega)_+$  with  $\|f_n\|_{\text{u}} \leq 1$  and  $\varphi(f_n) \geq 2^n$ . Note that

$$\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \|2^{-n} f_n\|_{\text{u}} \leq \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} 2^{-n}$$

---

<sup>xiii</sup>  $C_0(\Omega)_+ = \{f \in C_0(\Omega) \mid f(x) \geq 0 \forall x \in \Omega\}$ .

$$= 1,$$

meaning the series  $f = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} 2^{-n} f_n$  converges uniformly in  $C_0(\Omega)$ .

For  $N \in \mathbb{N}$ , we can see that  $f \geq \sum_{n=1}^N 2^{-n} f_n \geq 0$ , as  $f_n$  are all positive. Since  $\varphi$  preserves the order on  $C_0(\Omega)$ , we have

$$\begin{aligned} \varphi(f) &\geq \varphi\left(\sum_{n=1}^N 2^{-n} f_n\right) \\ &= \sum_{n=1}^N 2^{-n} \varphi(f_n) \\ &\geq \sum_{n=1}^N 2^{-n} 2^n \\ &= N. \end{aligned}$$

This is absurd since  $N$  is arbitrary. Thus,  $M < \infty$ .

Let  $f \in C_0(\Omega)$  with  $\|f\|_{\mathbf{u}} \leq 1$ . Let  $f = h + ik$  be the Cartesian decomposition. Then, we can write  $f = (h_+ - h_-) + i(k_+ - k_-)$ . Since  $\varphi$  is linear,  $|\varphi(f)| \leq 4M$ , meaning  $\|\varphi\|_{\text{op}} \leq 4M$ .  $\square$

**Proposition:** If  $\Omega$  is a compact Hausdorff space, and  $\varphi : C(\Omega) \rightarrow \mathbb{F}$  is linear, then  $\varphi$  is positive if and only if  $\|\varphi\| = \varphi(\mathbb{1}_{\Omega})$ .

*Proof.* Let  $h \in C(\Omega, \mathbb{R})$ . Then,

$$-\|h\| \mathbb{1}_{\Omega} \leq h \leq \|h\| \mathbb{1}_{\Omega}.$$

Thus, since  $\varphi$  is positive,

$$-\|h\| \varphi(\mathbb{1}_{\Omega}) \leq \varphi(h) \leq \|h\| \varphi(\mathbb{1}_{\Omega}).$$

Thus,  $|\varphi(h)| \leq \|h\| \varphi(\mathbb{1}_{\Omega})$ .

Let  $f \in C(\Omega)$ , and find  $\omega \in \mathbb{C}$  such that  $|\omega| = 1$  and  $\omega\varphi(f) = |\varphi(f)|$ . Set  $g = \omega f$ . Note that  $\|g\|_{\mathbf{u}} = \|f\|_{\mathbf{u}}$ . Then,

$$\begin{aligned} |\varphi(f)| &= \text{Re}(|\varphi(f)|) \\ &= \text{Re}(\omega\varphi(f)) \\ &= \text{Re}(\varphi(\omega f)) \\ &= \text{Re}(\varphi(g)) \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \left( \varphi(g) + \overline{\varphi(g)} \right) \\ &= \varphi\left(\frac{g + \bar{g}}{2}\right) \\ &= \varphi(\text{Re}(g)) \\ &\leq \varphi(\mathbb{1}_{\Omega}) \|\text{Re}(g)\|_{\mathbf{u}} \\ &\leq \varphi(\mathbb{1}_{\Omega}) \|g\| \\ &= \varphi(\mathbb{1}_{\Omega}) \|f\|_{\mathbf{u}}, \end{aligned}$$

meaning  $\|\varphi\|_{\text{op}} \leq \varphi(\mathbb{1}_{\Omega})$ .

Suppose  $\|\varphi\| = \varphi(\mathbb{1}_\Omega)$ . We start by claiming that if  $h \in C(\Omega, \mathbb{R})$ , then  $\varphi(h) \in \mathbb{R}$ . Let  $\varphi(h) = a + bi$ ; we will show that  $b = 0$ . Let  $t \in \mathbb{R}$  be arbitrary.

$$\begin{aligned}\|h + it\mathbb{1}_\Omega\|_u^2 &= \left( \sup_{x \in \Omega} |h(x) + it| \right)^2 \\ &= \sup_{x \in \Omega} |h(x) + it|^2 \\ &= \sup_{x \in \Omega} (h(x)^2 + t^2) \\ &= \|h\|_u^2 + t^2.\end{aligned}$$

Thus,

$$\begin{aligned}|\varphi(h + it\mathbb{1}_\Omega)|^2 &\leq (\varphi(\mathbb{1}_\Omega))^2 \|h + it\mathbb{1}_\Omega\|^2 \\ &= (\varphi(\mathbb{1}_\Omega))^2 (\|h\|^2 + t^2).\end{aligned}$$

Alternatively,

$$\begin{aligned}|\varphi(h + it\mathbb{1}_\Omega)|^2 &= |\varphi(h) + it\varphi(\mathbb{1}_\Omega)|^2 \\ &= |a + i(b + t\varphi(\mathbb{1}_\Omega))|^2 \\ &= a^2 + (b + t\varphi(\mathbb{1}_\Omega))^2 \\ &= a^2 + b^2 + t^2(\varphi(\mathbb{1}_\Omega))^2 + 2bt\varphi(\mathbb{1}_\Omega).\end{aligned}$$

Thus, we get  $a^2 + b^2 + 2bt\varphi(\mathbb{1}_\Omega) \leq (\varphi(\mathbb{1}_\Omega))^2 \|h\|^2$ . If  $b \neq 0$ , sending  $t \rightarrow \infty$  yields a contradiction. Thus,  $b = 0$ .

Assume  $f \in C(\Omega)_+$ . Observe that  $\text{Ran}(f - \|f\|\mathbb{1}_\Omega) \subseteq [-\|f\|, \|f\|]$ , meaning  $\|f - \|f\|\mathbb{1}_\Omega\| \leq \|f\|$ . Thus,

$$\begin{aligned}|\varphi(f) - \|f\|\varphi(\mathbb{1}_\Omega)| &= |\varphi(f - \|f\|\mathbb{1}_\Omega)| \\ &\leq \varphi(\mathbb{1}_\Omega) \|f - \|f\|\mathbb{1}_\Omega\| \\ &\leq \varphi(\mathbb{1}_\Omega) \|f\|.\end{aligned}$$

Since  $\varphi(f) \in \mathbb{R}$ , we have  $\varphi(f) \geq 0$ , so  $\varphi$  is positive. □

**Corollary:** Let  $\Omega$  be a compact Hausdorff space. The state space

$$S(\Omega) = \{\varphi \in C(\Omega)^* \mid \varphi(\mathbb{1}_\Omega) = 1 = \|\varphi\|\}$$

is convex.

*Proof.* Suppose  $\varphi_1, \varphi_2 \in S(\Omega)$ ,  $t \in [0, 1]$ . Then,  $(1 - t)\varphi_1 + t\varphi_2$  is a positive functional, meaning

$$\begin{aligned}\|(1 - t)\varphi_1 + t\varphi_2\| &= (1 - t)\varphi(\mathbb{1}_\Omega) + t\varphi(\mathbb{1}_\Omega) \\ &= (1 - t) + t \\ &= 1,\end{aligned}$$

so  $S(\Omega)$  is convex. □

Now, we can associate bounded linear functionals with regular measures.

**Theorem (Riesz Representation Theorem):** Let  $\Omega$  be a locally compact Hausdorff space. If  $\varphi : C_c(\Omega) \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  is a positive linear functional, then there exists a unique Radon measure  $\mu$  such that

$$\varphi(f) = \int_{\Omega} f \, d\mu,$$

with  $|\varphi(f)| \leq \|f\| \mu(\text{supp}(f))$ . The Radon measure  $\mu$  also satisfies the following.

(1) For every open  $U \subseteq \Omega$ , we have

$$\mu(U) = \sup \{ \varphi(f) \mid f \in C_c(\Omega, [0, 1]), \text{supp}(f) \subseteq U \}.$$

(2) For every compact  $K \subseteq \Omega$ ,

$$\mu(K) = \inf \{ \varphi(f) \mid f \geq \mathbb{1}_K \}.$$

The following proof is adapted from Folland's *Real Analysis*. In order to provide a complete proof of the Riesz Representation theorem, we need some previously established theorems and lemmas.

**Lemma:** Let  $A$  and  $B$  be disjoint subsets of a normal space  $X$ .<sup>xiii</sup> Let  $\Delta = \{k2^{-n} \mid n \geq 1, 0 < k < 2^n\}$  be the set of dyadic rationals in  $(0, 1)$ .

There is a family  $\{U_r \mid r \in \Delta\}$  of open sets in  $X$  such that  $A \subseteq U_r \subseteq B^c$  for all  $r \in \Delta$ , and  $\overline{U_r} \subseteq U_s$  for  $r < s$ .

*Proof.* Since  $X$  is normal, there exist disjoint open sets  $V$  and  $W$  such that  $A \subset V$  and  $B \subset W$ .

Let  $U_{1/2} = V$ . Since  $W^c$  is closed, it is the case that

$$A \subset U_{1/2} \subset \overline{U_{1/2}} \subset W^c \subset B^c.$$

We select  $U_r$  for  $r = k2^{-n}$  by inducting on  $n$ .

Suppose we have chosen  $U_r$  for  $r = k2^{-n}$  for  $0 < k < 2^n$  and  $n \leq N - 1$ . To find  $U_r$  for  $r = (2j + 1)2^{-N}$  (where  $0 \leq j \leq 2^{N-1}$ ), we see that

$$\overline{U_{j2^{1-N}}} \cap (U_{(j+1)2^{1-N}})^c = \emptyset,$$

where we have defined  $\overline{U_0} = A$  and  $U_1^c = B$ . So, we can select  $U_r$  such that

$$A \subset \overline{U_{j2^{1-N}}} \subset U_r \subset \overline{U_r} \subset U_{(j+1)2^{1-N}} \subset B^c.$$

□

**Theorem** (Urysohn's Lemma): Let  $X$  be a normal space. Then, if  $A$  and  $B$  are disjoint closed sets in  $X$ , there exists  $f \in C(X, [0, 1])$  such that  $f(A) = 0$  and  $f(B) = 1$ .

*Proof.* Let  $U_r$  be defined by the previous lemma for  $r \in \Delta$ . Set  $U_1 = X$ .

For  $x \in X$ , define  $f(x) = \inf \{r \mid x \in U_r\}$ . Since  $A \subset U_r \subseteq B^c$  for  $0 < r < 1$ , we have  $f(x) = 0$  for  $x \in A$  and  $f(x) = 1$  for  $x \in B$ , and  $0 \leq f(x) \leq 1$  for all  $x \in X$ .

Now, we need to show that  $f$  is continuous.

We can see that  $f(x) < \alpha$  if and only if  $x \in U_r$  for some  $r < \alpha$ , which happens if and only if  $x \in \bigcup_{r < \alpha} U_r$ . Thus,  $f^{-1}((-\infty, \alpha)) = \bigcup_{r < \alpha} U_r$ .

Additionally,  $f(x) > \alpha$  if and only if  $x \notin U_r$  for some  $r > \alpha$ , which happens if and only if  $x \notin \overline{U_s}$  for some  $s > \alpha$ , thus  $x \in \bigcup_{s > \alpha} (\overline{U_s})^c$ , meaning  $f^{-1}((\alpha, \infty)) = \bigcup_{s > \alpha} (\overline{U_s})^c$  is open.

Since the open half lines generate the topology on  $\mathbb{R}$ , we have  $f$  is continuous. □

**Proposition:** Let  $X$  be a locally compact Hausdorff space, and  $K \subset U \subset X$ , where  $K$  is compact, and  $U$  is open. Then, there exists an open set  $V$  with compact closure such that  $K \subset V \subset \overline{V} \subset U$ .

<sup>xiii</sup>A normal space is a space where, if  $A$  and  $B$  are disjoint closed subsets, then there exist disjoint open subsets  $U$  and  $V$  such that  $A \subseteq U$  and  $B \subseteq V$ .

*Proof.* Since  $X$  is locally compact, we can choose a compact neighborhood  $N_x$  for each  $x \in K$  with  $N_x \subset U$ . Then

$$K \subset \bigcup_{x \in K} N_x^\circ$$

is an open cover of  $K$ . Let  $\{N_{x_i}\}_{i=1}^n$  be a finite subcover, and let  $V = \bigcup_{i=1}^n N_{x_i}^\circ$ . Then,  $K \subset V$ , and  $\bar{V} = \bigcup_{i=1}^n \bar{N}_{x_i}$  is compact and contained in  $U$ .  $\square$

**Theorem** (Urysohn's Lemma for Locally Compact Hausdorff Spaces): Let  $X$  be a locally compact Hausdorff space, and  $K \subset U \subset X$  with  $K$  compact and  $U$  open. Then, there exists  $f \in C_c(X, [0, 1])$  such that  $f = 1$  on  $K$  and  $\text{supp}(f) \subset U$ .

*Proof.* Let  $V$  be open such that  $K \subset V \subset \bar{V} \subset U$ . Then,  $\bar{V}$  is normal, so there exists  $f \in C(\bar{V}, [0, 1])$  such that  $f = 1$  on  $K$  and  $f = 0$  on  $\partial V$ , as  $\partial V \subset \bar{V}$  is closed and  $\partial V \cap K = \emptyset$ . We extend  $f$  to  $X$  by setting  $f = 0$  on  $\bar{V}^c$ .

Let  $E \subseteq [0, 1]$  be closed. If  $0 \notin E$ , then  $f^{-1}(E) = (f|_{\bar{V}})^{-1}(E)$ , and if  $0 \in E$ , then  $f^{-1}(E) = (f|_{\bar{V}})^{-1}(E) \cup \bar{V}^c$ , as  $\partial V \subseteq (f|_{\bar{V}})^{-1}(E)$ . Thus,  $f^{-1}(E)$  is closed, so  $f$  is continuous.  $\square$

**Proposition** (Partition of Unity): If  $K$  is a compact set in a locally compact Hausdorff space  $\Omega$  with an open cover  $\{U_j\}_{j=1}^n$ , then there is a partition of unity<sup>xiv</sup> on  $K$  consisting of compactly supported functions  $g_j$  such that  $\text{supp}(g_j) \subseteq U_j$ .

*Proof.* For each  $x \in K$ , there is a compact neighborhood  $N_x$  such that  $N_x \subseteq U_j$  for some  $j$ . The set  $\{N_x^\circ \mid x \in K\}$  is an open cover of  $K$ , meaning there exist  $x_1, \dots, x_m$  such that  $K \subseteq \bigcup_{k=1}^m N_{x_k}$ .

Let  $F_j$  be the union of the set of  $N_{x_k}$  that are a subset of  $U_j$ . Then,  $F_j \subseteq U_j$  is compact, so by Urysohn's lemma, there are  $g_1, \dots, g_n \in C_c(\Omega)$  such that  $g_j = 1$  on  $F_j$  and  $\text{supp}(g_j) \subseteq U_j$ .

Since  $F_j$  covers  $K$ , it is the case that  $\sum_{k=1}^n g_k \geq 1$  on  $K$ . By Urysohn's Lemma, there  $f \in C_c(\Omega, [0, 1])$  such that  $f = 1$  on  $K$  and  $\text{supp}(f) \subseteq \{x \mid \sum_{k=1}^n g_k(x) > 0\}$ .

Define  $g_{n+1} = 1 - f$ , meaning  $\sum_{k=1}^{n+1} g_k > 0$  everywhere. For  $j = 1, \dots, n$ , let  $h_j = \frac{g_j}{\sum_{k=1}^{n+1} g_k}$ . Then,  $\text{supp}(h_j) = \text{supp}(g_j)$ ,  $\text{supp}(h_j) \subseteq U_j$ , and  $\sum_{j=1}^n h_j = 1$  on  $K$ .  $\square$

With these results in mind, we can now begin the proof of the Riesz Representation theorem.

**Notation:** For an open set  $U$ , we let  $f < U$  denote  $f \in C_c(\Omega, [0, 1])$  and  $\text{supp}(f) \subset U$ .

*Proof.* We start by establishing uniqueness.

Let  $\mu$  be a Radon measure such that  $\varphi(f) = \int_{\Omega} f \, d\mu$  for all  $f \in C_c(\Omega)$ . For  $U \subseteq X$  open, it is the case that  $\varphi(f) \leq \mu(U)$  for  $f < U$ .

If  $K \subseteq U$  is compact, Urysohn's lemma gives  $f \in C_c(\Omega)$  such that  $f < U$  and  $f = 1$  on  $K$ , meaning  $\mu(K) \leq \int_{\Omega} f \, d\mu = \varphi(f)$ . Since  $\mu$  is inner regular on  $U$ , we satisfy condition (1). Thus,  $\mu$  is determined on all open sets by  $\varphi$ , and so is determined on all Borel sets since  $\mu$  is outer regular.

To show existence, we start by defining

$$\mu(U) = \sup \{ \varphi(f) \mid f \in C_c(\Omega), f < U \}.$$

<sup>xiv</sup>A collection of functions in  $C(X, [0, 1])$  such that their sum is 1 on  $E$  and every neighborhood has only finitely many nonzero functions.

For any  $E \subseteq X$ , we define

$$\mu^*(E) = \inf \{ \mu(U) \mid E \subseteq U, U \text{ open} \}.$$

Note that by the way we define  $\mu$ , if  $U \subseteq V$ , then  $\mu(U) \leq \mu(V)$ , meaning  $\mu^*(U) = \mu(U)$  if  $U$  is open.

We begin by showing that  $\mu^*$  is an outer measure. It suffices to show that for a sequence of open sets  $\{U_j\}_{j=1}^n$  such that  $U = \bigcup_{j=1}^{\infty} U_j$ ,  $\mu(U) \leq \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} \mu(U_j)$ . From this, we can see that, for any  $E \subseteq X$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} \mu^*(E) &= \inf \left\{ \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} \mu(U_j) \mid U_j \text{ open}, E \subseteq \bigcup_{j=1}^{\infty} U_j \right\} \\ &= \inf \{ \mu(U) \mid E \subseteq U, U \text{ open} \} \end{aligned}$$

defines an outer measure.

Let  $U = \bigcup_{j=1}^{\infty} U_j$  and  $f \in C_c(\Omega)$  with  $f < U$ . Let  $K = \text{supp}(f)$ . Since  $K$  is compact,  $K \subseteq \bigcup_{i=1}^n U_i$  for some  $n$ .

By the partition of unity proposition, we can construct  $g_i < U_i$  with  $\sum_{i=1}^n g_i = 1$  on  $K$ . Then,  $f = \sum_{i=1}^n f g_i$ , with  $f g_i < U_i$ . Thus,

$$\begin{aligned} \varphi(f) &= \sum_{i=1}^n \varphi(f g_i) \\ &\leq \sum_{i=1}^n \mu(U_i) \\ &\leq \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} \mu(U_j). \end{aligned}$$

Thus,  $\sup_{f \in C_c(\Omega)} (\varphi(f)) = \mu(U) \leq \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} \mu(U_j)$ . Since this holds for any  $f < U$ , we conclude that  $\mu(U) \leq \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} \mu(U_j)$ .

We now show that for any open set  $U \subseteq \Omega$ ,  $U$  is  $\mu^*$ -measurable.

Let  $U$  be open,  $E \subseteq \Omega$  with  $\mu^*(E) < \infty$ . Suppose  $E$  is open. Then,  $E \cap U$  is open, so for  $\varepsilon > 0$ , we can find  $f \in C_c(\Omega)$  such that  $f < E \cap U$  and  $\varphi(f) > \mu(E \cap U) - \varepsilon$ . Additionally,  $E \setminus \text{supp}(f)$  is open, so we can find  $g \in C_c(\Omega)$  such that  $g < E \setminus \text{supp}(f)$ , and  $\varphi(g) > \mu(E \setminus \text{supp}(f)) - \varepsilon$ . However,  $f + g < E$ , so

$$\begin{aligned} \mu(E) &\geq \varphi(f) + \varphi(g) \\ &> \mu(E \cap U) + \mu(E \setminus \text{supp}(f)) - 2\varepsilon \\ &\geq \mu^*(E \cap U) + \mu^*(E \setminus U) - 2\varepsilon. \end{aligned}$$

We obtain the desired inequality as  $\varepsilon \rightarrow 0$ .

For any  $E \subseteq \Omega$ , we find  $V$  open with  $E \subseteq V$  and  $\mu(V) < \mu^*(E) + \varepsilon$  (by our definition of  $\mu^*$ ). Thus,

$$\begin{aligned} \mu^*(E) + \varepsilon &> \mu(V) \\ &\geq \mu^*(V \cap U) + \mu^*(V \setminus U) \\ &\geq \mu^*(E \cap U) + \mu^*(E \setminus U). \end{aligned}$$

We let  $\varepsilon \rightarrow 0$  to obtain our desired inequality.

Now, we show that for any compact  $K \subseteq \Omega$ ,  $\mu(K) = \inf \{ \varphi(f) \mid f \in C_c(\Omega), f \geq 1_K \}$ .



Let  $K$  be compact,  $f \in C_c(\Omega)$ , and  $f \geq \mathbb{1}_K$ . Let  $U_\varepsilon = \{x \mid f(x) > 1 - \varepsilon\}$ . Then,  $U_\varepsilon$  is open, and for  $g < U_\varepsilon$ , we have  $(1 - \varepsilon)^{-1} f - g \geq 0$ .

Thus,  $\varphi(g) \leq (1 - \varepsilon)^{-1} \varphi(f)$ , meaning  $\mu(K) \leq \mu(U_\varepsilon) \leq (1 - \varepsilon)^{-1} \varphi(f)$ . Letting  $\varepsilon \rightarrow 0$ , we find  $\mu(K) \leq \varphi(f)$ .

For any  $K \subseteq U$ , Urysohn's lemma gives  $f \in C_c(\Omega)$  such that  $f \geq \mathbb{1}_K$  and  $f < U$ , meaning  $\varphi(f) \leq \mu(U)$ . Since  $\mu$  is outer regular, we obtain condition (2).

With our measure  $\mu$  defined, we only need to show that  $\varphi(f) = \int_\Omega f \, d\mu$  for  $f \in C_c(\Omega, [0, 1])$ , as  $C_c(\Omega)$  is the linear span of  $C_c(\Omega, [0, 1])$ .

Set  $f \in C_c(\Omega, [0, 1])$ . Given  $N \in \mathbb{N}$ , for  $1 \leq j \leq N$ , let  $K_j = \{x \mid f(x) \geq \frac{j}{N}\}$ . Let  $K_0 = \text{supp}(f)$ . Define  $f_1, \dots, f_N \in C_c(\Omega)$  with  $f_j(x) = 0$  for  $x \notin K_{j-1}$ ,  $f_j(x) = f(x) - \frac{j-1}{N}$  for  $x \in K_{j-1} \setminus K_j$ , and  $f_j = \frac{1}{N}$  for  $x \in K_j$ .

We, thus have  $\frac{\mathbb{1}_{K_j}}{N} \leq f_j \leq \frac{\mathbb{1}_{K_{j-1}}}{N}$ , meaning

$$\frac{1}{N} \mu(K_j) \leq \int_\Omega f_j \, d\mu \leq \frac{1}{N} \mu(K_{j-1}).$$

If  $U$  is an open set containing  $K_{j-1}$ , then  $Nf_j < U$ , meaning  $\varphi(f_j) \leq \frac{\mu(U)}{N}$ . Thus, by condition (2), and outer regularity,

$$\frac{1}{N} \mu(K_j) \leq \varphi(f_j) \leq \frac{1}{N} \mu(K_{j-1}).$$

Since  $f = \sum_{j=1}^N f_j$ , we have

$$\frac{1}{N} \sum_{j=1}^N \mu(K_j) \leq \int_\Omega f \, d\mu \leq \frac{1}{N} \sum_{j=1}^N \mu(K_{j-1}),$$

and

$$\frac{1}{N} \sum_{j=1}^N \mu(K_j) \leq \varphi(f) \leq \frac{1}{N} \sum_{j=1}^{N-1} \mu(K_j).$$

Thus,

$$\begin{aligned} \left| \varphi(f) - \int_\Omega f \, d\mu \right| &\leq \frac{\mu(K_0) - \mu(K_N)}{N} \\ &\leq \frac{\mu(\text{supp}(f))}{N}. \end{aligned}$$

Since  $\mu(\text{supp}(f)) < \infty$ , and  $N$  is arbitrary, we have  $I(f) = \int_\Omega f \, d\mu$ . □

We can state the Riesz representation theorem for functions on  $C(X)$ .

**Theorem (Riesz Representation Theorem,  $C(X)$ ):** Let  $X$  be compact. Let  $\varphi \in (C(X))^*$  be a state. Then, for  $f \in C(X)$ , there is a unique Borel probability measure  $\mu$  such that

$$\varphi(f) = \int_X f \, d\mu.$$

*Proof.* We start by letting  $X = \Delta$ , where  $\Delta = \prod_{\mathbb{N}} \{0, 1\}$  be the Cantor set. Here,  $\{0, 1\}$  is endowed with the discrete topology, and  $\Delta$  the product topology.

We consider  $C \subseteq \mathcal{P}(\Delta)$  to be the set of all clopen subsets of  $\Delta$ . Since the empty set and  $\Delta$  are clopen, the complement of any clopen set is clopen, and the finite union of clopen sets is clopen, it is the case that  $C$  is an algebra of subsets of  $\Delta$ .

For  $E \in C$ , we define  $\mu_0(E) = \varphi(\mathbb{1}_E)$ . We can see that

$$\begin{aligned}\mu_0(E \sqcup F) &= \varphi(\mathbb{1}_{E \sqcup F}) \\ &= \varphi(\mathbb{1}_E + \mathbb{1}_F) \\ &= \varphi(\mathbb{1}_E) + \varphi(\mathbb{1}_F) \\ &= \mu_0(E) + \mu_0(F).\end{aligned}$$

Additionally, for a pairwise disjoint countable collection  $\{E_k\}_{k \geq 1} \subseteq C$  with  $\bigcup_{k \geq 1} E_k \in C$ , we have

$$\begin{aligned}\mu_0\left(\bigcup_{k \geq 1} E_k\right) &= \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \mu_0\left(\bigcup_{k=1}^n E_k\right) \\ &= \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \sum_{k=1}^n \mu_0(E_k) \\ &= \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \mu_0(E_k).\end{aligned}$$

Thus, we have established  $\mu_0$  as a premeasure on  $C$ .

To see that  $\mu_0$  is  $\sigma$ -finite, we examine  $\Delta' \subseteq [0, 1]$  homeomorphic to the Cantor set, where  $r : \Delta \rightarrow \Delta'$  is the homeomorphism. There, we can see that  $E'_k = [0, \frac{1}{k}] \cap \Delta'$  is a clopen set, so  $r^{-1}(E'_k) \in C$ .

Thus,  $\Delta = r^{-1}(\bigcup_{k \geq 1} E'_k)$ , meaning

$$\begin{aligned}\mu_0\left(\bigcup_{k \geq 1} r^{-1}(E'_k)\right) &= \varphi\left(\mathbb{1}_{\bigcup_{k \geq 1} r^{-1}(E'_k)}\right) \\ &= \varphi(\mathbb{1}_\Delta) \\ &= 1,\end{aligned}$$

meaning  $\mu_0$  is  $\sigma$ -finite.

By Carathéodory's extension theorem,  $\mu_0$  extends to a unique measure  $\mu$  on  $\sigma(C)$ .

We now show that  $\sigma(C) = \mathcal{B}_\Delta$ . To do this, we can see that since  $\Delta$  is totally disconnected and (locally) compact,  $\Delta$  is zero-dimensional, and thus admits a base of compact open (hence clopen) sets. Since the topology  $\tau$  on  $\Delta$  is generated by  $C$ , we have  $\tau \subseteq \sigma(C)$ , so

$$\begin{aligned}\mathcal{B}_\Delta &= \sigma(\tau) \\ &\subseteq \sigma(C),\end{aligned}$$

so  $\mathcal{B}_\Delta = \sigma(C)$ . Thus, the unique measure  $\mu$  that extends  $\mu_0$  is a Borel probability measure on  $\Delta$ .

Let  $f \in C(\Delta, \mathbb{R})$  be positive. Then, there is a pointwise increasing sequence of simple functions,  $(s_n)_n$  such that  $(s_n)_n \rightarrow f$  pointwise, meaning  $f$  is measurable. Since  $f \in C(\Delta)$ ,  $f$  is bounded, so  $(s_n)_n$  can be defined such that  $s_n \leq f$  for all  $n$ , meaning that the convergence  $(s_n)_n \rightarrow f$  is uniform.

By dominated convergence, we have

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \varphi(s_n) = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \int_{\Delta} s_n \, d\mu$$

$$\begin{aligned}
&= \int_{\Delta} \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} s_n \, d\mu \\
&= \int_{\Delta} f \, d\mu.
\end{aligned}$$

For the general case of  $f \in C(\Delta)$ , we split  $f$  into

$$f = (u_+ - u_-) + i(v_+ - v_-),$$

and apply the previous process to each of  $u_{\pm}, v_{\pm}$ . Thus,

$$\varphi(f) = \int_{\Delta} f \, d\mu.$$

For the general case of  $X$  as a compact metric space, we use the following theorem.

**Theorem** (Cantor Surjection Theorem): Let  $X$  be a compact metric space. There is a surjection  $f : \Delta \rightarrow X$  which induces an embedding  $C(X) \hookrightarrow C(\Delta)$ .

To prove this theorem, we use some lemmas. The proof of the Cantor Surjection Theorem is adapted from Aliprantis and Border's *Infinite Dimensional Analysis*.

**Lemma:** If  $X$  is a compact metric space,  $X$  is homeomorphic to a subset of the Hilbert cube,  $[0, 1]^{\mathbb{N}}$ .

*Proof.* Let  $X$  be a compact metric space. Then,  $X$  is normal. Let  $\mathcal{B}$  be a countable topological base of nonempty subsets of  $X$ , and let  $C = \{(U, V) \mid \overline{U} \subset V \text{ and } U, V \in \mathcal{B}\}$ . Since  $X$  is normal,  $C$  is nonempty, and since  $\mathcal{B}$  is countable, so too is  $C$ .

For each  $n$ , we select a continuous real function  $f_n$  with values in  $[0, 1]$  such that  $f_n(\overline{U}) = 1$  and  $f_n(V^c) = 0$ ; such a function must exist by Urysohn's Lemma. Since  $X$  is Hausdorff, the family  $\{f_n\}_{n=1}^{\infty}$  must separate points.

Define  $\varphi : X \rightarrow [0, 1]^{\mathbb{N}}$  by

$$\varphi(x) = (f_n(x))_n.$$

If  $C$  is finite, we fill the sequence with zero functions.

Since  $\{f_n\}_{n=1}^{\infty}$  separates the points of  $X$ ,  $\varphi$  is one to one, and since  $f_n$  is continuous, so too is  $\varphi$ . All we need show is that  $\varphi^{-1}$  is continuous.

Let  $\varphi(x_{\alpha}) \rightarrow \varphi(x)$  be a net, and let  $W$  be a neighborhood of  $x$ . Since  $\mathcal{B}$  is a base, there is some  $U_n$  and some  $V_n$  in  $C$  such that  $x \in U_n \subset \overline{U_n} \subset V_n \subset W$ , meaning  $f_n(x) = 1$ . Thus, we must have  $f_n(x_{\alpha}) \rightarrow f_n(x)$  for each  $n$ , meaning that for large enough  $\alpha$ ,  $f_n(x_{\alpha}) > 0$ . This means  $x_{\alpha} \in V_n \subseteq W$  for large  $\alpha$ . Thus,  $x_{\alpha} \rightarrow x$ .  $\square$

**Lemma:** The Cantor set,  $\Delta$ , is homeomorphic with  $\Delta^{\mathbb{N}}$ .

*Proof.* Let  $\{A_k\}_{k=1}^{\infty}$  be a partition of  $\mathbb{N}$  consisting of pairwise disjoint countably infinite sets. We order each  $A_k$  according to the algebraic ordering on  $\mathbb{N}$ . In particular,  $A_k = \{n_{i,k}\}_{i=1}^{\infty}$ .

We let  $a = (a_1, a_2, \dots) \in \Delta^{\mathbb{N}}$ , and take  $a_k = (a_{1,k}, a_{2,k}, \dots)$  be the  $k$ th index of each  $a_i$ , and define  $b_{n_{i,k}} = a_{i,k}$ .

We define  $\psi : \Delta^{\mathbb{N}} \rightarrow \Delta$  by  $\psi(a_1, a_2, \dots) = (b_1, b_2, \dots)$ . Then, it is the case that  $\psi$  is a continuous bijection, meaning  $\psi$  is a homeomorphism.  $\square$

**Lemma:** For each closed  $K \subseteq \Delta$ , there exists a continuous surjection  $f : \Delta \rightarrow K$  with  $f(x) = x$  for each  $x \in K$ .

*Proof.* Let  $K \subseteq \Delta$  be closed. Then,  $K$  is compact. Thus, for each  $x \in \Delta$ , there is a unique  $y \in K$  such that  $d(x, y)$  is minimized. We define  $f(x) = y$ .

Since  $\text{dist}_K(x)$  is continuous, it is the case that  $f$  is a continuous surjection with  $f(x) = x$  for all  $x \in K$ .  $\square$

**Lemma:** For any proper map (a continuous map where the preimage of any compact set is compact)  $\tau : \Omega \rightarrow \Lambda$ , the induced map  $T_\tau : C_0(\Lambda) \rightarrow C_0(\Omega)$  is a linear isometric embedding, where  $T_\tau(f) = f \circ \tau$ .

If  $\tau$  is surjective, then  $T_\tau$  is injective.

*Proof.* Since  $f$  and  $\tau$  are continuous,  $T_\tau(f)$  is also continuous (and linear, since composition is linear in the first argument).

Additionally, since  $\tau$  is proper, it is the case that  $T_\tau$  vanishes at infinity. For any  $\varepsilon > 0$  and  $f \in C_0(\Lambda)$ , there is a compact  $K \subseteq \Lambda$  such that  $|f(y)| \leq \varepsilon$  for  $y \notin K$ . If  $x \notin \tau^{-1}(K)$ , then  $\tau(x) \notin K$ , so  $|T_\tau(f)(x)| = |f(\tau(x))| \leq \varepsilon$ .

If  $\tau$  is surjective, then if  $T_\tau(f) = 0$ , then  $f|_{\text{Ran}(\tau)} = 0$ , so  $f = 0$ . We have shown already that if  $\tau$  is surjective, then  $\|T_\tau(f)\| = \|f\|_\infty$ , meaning  $T_\tau$  is an isometry.  $\square$

With all these in mind, we can now prove the Cantor surjection theorem.

*Proof of Cantor Surjection Theorem.* Let  $X$  be a compact metric space. Then, there is an embedding  $\varphi : X \hookrightarrow [0, 1]^N$ . Let  $Y = \varphi(X) \subseteq [0, 1]^N$ .

There is a continuous surjection  $\psi : \Delta \rightarrow [0, 1]^N$ . Since  $Y$  is compact (hence closed),  $\psi^{-1}(Y) \subseteq \Delta$  is closed. There exists  $f : \Delta \rightarrow \psi^{-1}(Y)$  such that  $f(x) = x$  for all  $x \in \psi^{-1}(Y)$ .

We can make a continuous surjection from  $\Delta$  to  $X$  by taking

$$\Delta \xrightarrow{f} \psi^{-1}(Y) \xrightarrow{\psi} Y \xrightarrow{\varphi^{-1}} X.$$

Note that since the composition  $\tau = \varphi^{-1} \circ \psi \circ f$  is surjective, it is the case that the induced map  $T_\tau : C(X) \hookrightarrow C(\Delta)$  is a linear isometric embedding.  $\square$

Now that we have proven the Cantor surjection theorem, we let  $X$  be any compact metric space, and  $\tau : \Delta \rightarrow X$  be a continuous surjection. Letting  $\mu$  be the given measure on  $C(\Delta)$ , we use the pushforward measure  $\nu = \tau_*\mu$  on  $X$  by setting

$$\begin{aligned} \nu(E) &= \tau_*\mu(E) \\ &= \mu\left(\tau^{-1}(E)\right). \end{aligned}$$

Thus, we have proven the Riesz representation theorem for  $C(X)$ .  $\square$

Having proven the Riesz Representation Theorem, we can begin to describe all bounded linear functionals on continuous function spaces, starting with the positive ones.

**Proposition:** Let  $\Omega$  be a locally compact Hausdorff space.

(1) For  $\mu$  a positive and finite regular measure on  $\Omega$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} \varphi_\mu : C_0(\Omega) &\rightarrow \mathbb{C} \\ \varphi_\mu(f) &= \int_\Omega f \, d\mu \end{aligned}$$

defines a positive linear functional with  $\|\varphi_\mu\|_{\text{op}} = \mu(\Omega)$ . Moreover,  $\varphi_\mu$  is faithful if  $\mu$  has full support.

- (2) If  $\varphi : C_0(\Omega) \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  is a positive linear functional, then there exists a unique positive and finite regular measure  $\mu_\varphi$  such that  $\varphi = \varphi_{\mu_\varphi}$ . That is,

$$\varphi(f) = \int_{\Omega} f \, d\mu_\varphi.$$

Moreover,  $\|\varphi\|_{\text{op}} = \mu(\Omega)$ , and  $\mu$  has full support if  $\varphi$  is faithful.

*Proof.* The map

$$\varphi_\mu(f) = \int_{\Omega} f \, d\mu$$

is positive, linear, and well-defined, since

$$\begin{aligned} |\varphi_\mu(f)| &\leq \left| \int_{\Omega} f \, d\mu \right| \\ &\leq \int_{\Omega} |f| \, d\mu \\ &\leq \|f\|_{\infty} \mu(\Omega). \end{aligned}$$

This also shows that  $\|\varphi_\mu\|_{\text{op}} \leq \mu(\Omega)$ . Given  $\varepsilon > 0$ , the regularity of  $\mu$  allows us to find  $K \subseteq \Omega$  with  $\mu(\Omega) - \varepsilon < \mu(K)$ . Urysohn's lemma gives a continuous  $f \in C_c(\Omega, [0, 1])$  with  $f = 1$  on  $K$ . Thus,

$$\begin{aligned} \|\varphi_\mu\|_{\text{op}} &\geq \varphi_\mu(f) \\ &= \int_{\Omega} f \, d\mu \\ &\geq \int_{\Omega} \mathbb{1}_K \, d\mu \\ &= \mu(K) \\ &> \mu(\Omega) - \varepsilon. \end{aligned}$$

Since  $\varepsilon$  was arbitrary,  $\mu(\Omega) \leq \|\varphi_\mu\|_{\text{op}}$ .

Suppose  $g \in C_0(\Omega)$  with  $g \geq 0$  and  $g \neq 0$ . Then, there is a nonempty open subset  $U \subseteq \Omega$  and  $\delta > 0$  such that  $g(x) \geq \delta$  for all  $x \in U$ . If  $\mu$  has full support,  $\mu(U) > 0$ , meaning

$$\begin{aligned} \varphi(g) &= \int_{\Omega} g \, d\mu \\ &\geq \int_{\Omega} \delta \mathbb{1}_U \, d\mu \\ &= \delta \mu(U) \\ &> 0. \end{aligned}$$

Thus, we have proven (1).

If  $\varphi : C_0(\Omega) \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  is a positive linear functional, then  $\varphi$  is bounded. The restriction  $\varphi_0 = \varphi|_{C_c(\Omega)} : C_c(\Omega) \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  is positive and linear, meaning  $\varphi_0 = I_\mu$  for some Radon measure  $\mu$  by the Riesz Representation Theorem. We set  $\mu_\varphi = \mu$ .

By the Riesz Representation theorem, we have

$$\mu(\Omega) = \sup \{ I_\mu(f) \mid f \in C_c(\Omega, [0, 1]), \text{ supp}(f) \subseteq \Omega \}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
&\leq \sup \{ \varphi(f) \mid f \in C_0(\Omega), \|f\| \leq 1 \} \\
&= \|\varphi\|_{\text{op}} \\
&< \infty.
\end{aligned}$$

Additionally, if  $f \in C_c(\Omega)$ , then

$$\begin{aligned}
|\varphi(f)| &= |\varphi_0(f)| \\
&\leq \left| \int_{\Omega} f \, d\mu \right| \\
&\leq \int_{\Omega} |f| \, d\mu \\
&\leq \|f\|_{\infty} \mu(\Omega).
\end{aligned}$$

Since  $C_c(\Omega) \subseteq C_0(\Omega)$  is dense, we have  $|\varphi(f)| \leq \|f\|_{\infty} \mu(\Omega)$  for all  $f \in C_0(\Omega)$ , meaning  $\|\varphi\|_{\text{op}} \leq \mu(\Omega)$ .

Since  $\mu$  is finite and Radon,  $\mu$  is regular. We can see that  $\varphi$  and  $\varphi_{\mu}$  are bounded functionals that agree on  $C_c(\Omega)$ , so  $\varphi = \varphi_{\mu}$ .

Suppose  $\varphi$  is faithful. Let  $U \subseteq \Omega$  be open and nonempty. By Urysohn's lemma, there is  $f : \Omega \rightarrow [0, 1]$  that is nonzero and compactly supported with  $\text{supp}(f) \subseteq U$ . Thus,

$$\begin{aligned}
\mu(U) &= \int_{\Omega} \mathbb{1}_U \, d\mu \\
&\geq \int_{\Omega} f \, d\mu \\
&= \varphi_{\mu}(f) \\
&= \varphi(f) \\
&> 0,
\end{aligned}$$

meaning  $\mu$  has full support. □

We let  $\mathcal{P}_r(\Omega)$  be the convex set of all regular probability measures on  $(\Omega, \mathcal{B}_{\Omega})$ . The following corollary follows from the previous proposition.

**Corollary:** Let  $\Omega$  be a compact Hausdorff space. There exists a bijective affine map  $T : S(\Omega) \rightarrow \mathcal{P}_r(\Omega)$  given by  $T(\varphi) = \mu_{\varphi}$ .

We can use the positive linear functionals to generate all bounded linear functionals on a function space.

**Theorem (Jordan Decomposition):** Let  $\Omega$  be a locally compact Hausdorff space, and suppose  $\varphi : C_0(\Omega) \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  be bounded linear. Then, there exists positive linear functionals  $\varphi_1, \varphi_2, \varphi_3, \varphi_4$  such that

$$\varphi = (\varphi_1 - \varphi_2) + i(\varphi_3 - \varphi_4),$$

and  $\|\varphi_j\|_{\text{op}} \leq \|\varphi\|_{\text{op}}$ .

**Remark:** The Jordan decomposition for positive linear functionals follows from the Hahn decomposition for complex measures.

If  $\varphi \in C_0(\Omega)^*$ , then the Jordan decomposition provides  $\varphi = (\varphi_1 - \varphi_2) + i(\varphi_3 - \varphi_4)$ , which gives the positive regular measures  $\mu_1, \dots, \mu_4$  such that  $\varphi_j(f) = \int_{\Omega} f \, d\mu_j$  for  $f \in C_0(\Omega)$ .

Then,  $\mu = (\mu_1 - \mu_2) + i(\mu_3 - \mu_4)$  has total variation  $|\mu|$ , meaning it is regular itself. Thus,

$$\begin{aligned}
\varphi(f) &= \varphi_1(f) - \varphi_2(f) + i(\varphi_3(f) - \varphi_4(f)) \\
&= \int_{\Omega} f \, d\mu_1 - \int_{\Omega} f \, d\mu_2 + i \left( \int_{\Omega} f \, d\mu_3 - \int_{\Omega} f \, d\mu_4 \right)
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
&= \int_{\Omega} f \, d\mu \\
&= \varphi_{\mu}(f).
\end{aligned}$$

Thus, we get the following characterization of  $C_0(\Omega)^*$ .

**Theorem (Riesz–Markov Theorem):** Let  $\Omega$  be a locally compact Hausdorff space. Then,  $M_r(\Omega) \cong C_0(\Omega)^*$ . The map  $\Phi : M_r(\Omega) \rightarrow C_0(\Omega)^*$  defined by  $\Phi(\mu) = \varphi_{\mu}$ , where

$$\varphi_{\mu} = \int_{\Omega} f \, d\mu,$$

is an isometric isomorphism.

## The Banach Space Adjoint

**Definition.** Let  $X, Y$  be normed vector spaces, and let  $T \in \mathcal{B}(X, Y)$ . Then, the map  $T^* : Y^* \rightarrow X^*$ , defined by  $T^*(\varphi) = \varphi \circ T$  is called the Banach space adjoint (or adjoint) of  $T$ .

We can see that  $T^*$  is well-defined since it is the composition of two bounded linear operators. Additionally,

$$\begin{aligned}
\|T^*(\varphi)\|_{\text{op}} &= \|\varphi \circ T\|_{\text{op}} \\
&\leq \|\varphi\|_{\text{op}} \|T\|_{\text{op}}.
\end{aligned}$$

**Proposition:** If  $X$  and  $Y$  are normed vector spaces,  $T \in \mathcal{B}(X, Y)$ , and  $T^*$  be the adjoint of  $T$ . Then,  $T^* \in \mathcal{B}(Y^*, X^*)$ , and  $\|T^*\|_{\text{op}} = \|T\|_{\text{op}}$ .

*Proof.* Let  $\varphi_1, \varphi_2 \in Y^*$ ,  $\alpha \in \mathbb{C}$ . Then,

$$\begin{aligned}
T^*(\varphi_1 + \alpha\varphi_2) &= (\varphi_1 + \alpha\varphi_2) \circ T \\
&= \varphi_1 \circ T + \alpha\varphi_2 \circ T \\
&= T^*(\varphi_1) + \alpha T^*(\varphi_2),
\end{aligned}$$

meaning  $T^*$  is linear. Recall that for any normed space  $Z$  and  $z \in Z$ , we have  $\|z\| = \sup_{\varphi \in B_{Z^*}} |\varphi(z)|$ . Thus, for  $x \in X$ , we have

$$\begin{aligned}
\|T(x)\| &= \sup_{\varphi \in B_{Y^*}} |\varphi(T(x))| \\
&= \sup_{\varphi \in B_{Y^*}} |T^*(\varphi)(x)| \\
&= \sup_{\varphi \in B_{Y^*}} |T^*(\varphi)| \|x\| \\
&\leq \|T^*\|_{\text{op}} \|x\|.
\end{aligned}$$

Thus, we have  $\|T\|_{\text{op}} \leq \|T^*\|_{\text{op}}$ . □

We can now understand some of the analytic and algebraic properties of the adjoint.

**Theorem:** Let  $X, Y, Z$  be normed spaces, and let  $T, S : X \rightarrow Y$ ,  $R : Y \rightarrow Z$  be bounded linear operators. The following are true.

- (1)  $(T + S)^* = T^* + S^*$
- (2)  $(\alpha T)^* = \alpha T^*$
- (3)  $(R \circ T)^* = T^* \circ R^*$

(4)  $(\text{id}_X)^* = \text{id}_{X^*}$

(5) The following diagram commutes.

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X^{**} & \xrightarrow{T^{**}} & Y^{**} \\ \uparrow \iota_X & & \uparrow \iota_Y \\ X & \xrightarrow{T} & Y \end{array}$$

*Proof of (5).*

$$\begin{aligned} T^{**}(\iota_X(x))(\varphi) &= T^{**}(\hat{x})(\varphi) \\ &= \hat{x} \circ T^*(\varphi) \\ &= \hat{x}(\varphi \circ T) \\ &= \varphi \circ T(x) \\ &= \widehat{T(x)}(\varphi) \\ &= \iota_Y(T(x))(\varphi). \end{aligned}$$

Thus,  $T^{**}(\iota_X(x)) = \iota_Y(T(x))$ , meaning  $T^{**} \circ \iota_X = \iota_Y \circ T$ . □

**Theorem:** Let  $X$  and  $Y$  be normed spaces.

- (1) If  $T : X \rightarrow Y$  is an isometric isomorphism, then  $T^* : Y^* \rightarrow X^*$  is an isometric isomorphism.
- (2) If  $T : X \rightarrow Y$  is a bicontinuous isomorphism, then  $(T^{-1})^* = (T^*)^{-1}$ , so  $T^*$  is a bicontinuous isomorphism.
- (3) If  $T : X \rightarrow Y$  is an isometry, then  $T^* : Y^* \rightarrow X^*$  is a 1-quotient map. We have  $T^*(B_{Y^*}) = B_{X^*}$ .
- (4) If  $T : X \rightarrow Y$  is a 1-quotient map, then  $T^* : Y^* \rightarrow X^*$ .
- (5)  $T : X \rightarrow Y$  is an isometry if and only if  $T^{**} : X^{**} \rightarrow Y^{**}$  is an isometry.
- (6) If  $T \in \mathcal{B}(X, Y)$ , and  $T^*$  is a 1-quotient map, then  $T$  is an isometry.
- (7) If  $X, Y$  are Banach spaces, and  $T \in \mathcal{B}(X, Y)$ , and  $T^*$  is an isometry, then  $T$  is a 1-quotient map.

*Proof.* Starting by proving (2), we have

$$\begin{aligned} \text{id}_{X^*} &= (\text{id}_X)^* \\ &= (T^{-1} \circ T)^* \\ &= T^* \circ (T^{-1})^* \end{aligned}$$

and

$$\text{id}_{X^*} = T^* \circ (T^{-1})^*,$$

meaning  $(T^*)^{-1} = (T^{-1})^*$ .

Now, turning our attention to (4), if  $T$  is a 1-quotient map, then  $T(U_X) = U_Y$ . For  $\psi \in Y^*$ , we have

$$\begin{aligned} \|T^*(\psi)\|_{\text{op}} &= \|\psi \circ T\|_{\text{op}} \\ &= \sup_{x \in U_X} \|\psi \circ T(x)\| \end{aligned}$$



$$\begin{aligned}
&= \sup_{y \in Y} \|\psi(y)\| \\
&= \|\psi\|_{\text{op}}.
\end{aligned}$$

Thus,  $T^*$  is an isometry.

Focusing on (3), we have  $\|T^*\|_{\text{op}} = \|T\|_{\text{op}} = 1$ , so  $T^*(B_{Y^*}) \subseteq B_{X^*}$ . Let  $\varphi \in B_{X^*}$ . We want to find  $\psi \in B_{Y^*}$  such that  $T^*(\psi) = \varphi$ . Let  $\psi_0 : \text{Ran}(T) \rightarrow \mathbb{F}$  be defined by  $\psi_0(T(x)) = \varphi(x)$ . This is well-defined since  $T$  is injective. For  $x \in B_X$ , we have

$$\begin{aligned}
|\psi_0(T(x))| &= |\varphi(x)| \\
&\leq \|\varphi\|_{\text{op}} \|x\| \\
&\leq \|\varphi\|_{\text{op}}.
\end{aligned}$$

Thus,  $\|\psi_0\|_{\text{op}} \leq \|\varphi\|_{\text{op}} \leq 1$ . There is an extension  $\psi \in Y^*$  of  $\psi_0$  such that  $\|\psi\|_{\text{op}} = \|\psi_0\|_{\text{op}}$ , and  $\psi \circ T = \varphi$ . Thus,  $T^*(B_{Y^*}) = B_{X^*}$ .

The veracity of (1) follows from (2), (3), and (4).

To show (5), we let  $T$  be isometric, which implies that  $T^*$  is a 1-quotient map. Thus, we have  $T^{**}$  is isometric. Conversely, if  $T^{**}$  is isometric, then

$$\begin{aligned}
\|T(x)\| &= \|\iota_Y(T(x))\| \\
&= \|T^{**}(\iota_X(x))\| \\
&= \|\iota_X(x)\| \\
&= \|x\|.
\end{aligned}$$

To see (6), if  $T^*$  is a 1-quotient map, then  $T^{**}$  is isometric, so  $T$  is isometric.

We will show (7) later. □

**Example.** Let  $\tau : \Omega \rightarrow \Lambda$  be a proper map<sup>xv</sup> between locally compact Hausdorff spaces. The induced contractive map  $T_\tau : C_0(\Lambda) \rightarrow C_0(\Omega)$  has an adjoint map

$$T_\tau^* : C_0(\Omega) \rightarrow C_0(\Lambda)^*,$$

where  $T_\tau^*(\varphi) = \varphi \circ T_\tau$ . By the Riesz–Markov theorem, we can identify  $C_0(\Omega)^* \cong M_r(\Omega)$ .

The push forward measure is an induced map

$$\tau_* : M(\Omega) \rightarrow M(\Lambda),$$

defined by

$$\tau_*\mu(E) := \mu(\tau^{-1}(E))$$

for any  $E \in \mathcal{B}_\Lambda$ . We can verify that  $\tau_*\mu$  is a complex measure on  $(\Lambda, \mathcal{B}_\Lambda)$ , and that  $\tau_*(\mathcal{P}(\Omega)) \subseteq \mathcal{P}(\Lambda)$ .

We can also see that for all  $f \in C_0(\Lambda)$ ,

$$\int_\Omega f \circ \tau \, d\mu = \int_\Lambda f \, d(\tau_*\mu).$$

---

<sup>xv</sup>Inverse image of a compact subset of  $\Lambda$  is compact in  $\Omega$

This is because, for some  $E \in \mathcal{B}_\Lambda$ , we have  $\mathbb{1}_E \circ \tau = \mathbb{1}_{\tau^{-1}(E)}$ , so

$$\begin{aligned} \int_{\Omega} \mathbb{1}_E \circ \tau \, d\mu &= \int_{\Omega} \mathbb{1}_{\tau^{-1}(E)} \, d\mu \\ &= \mu(\tau^{-1}(E)) \\ &= \tau_*\mu(E) \\ &= \int_{\Lambda} \mathbb{1}_E \, d(\tau_*\mu). \end{aligned}$$

Thus, since this identity holds for all simple functions, and every bounded function is the uniform limit of a simple function, we get that

$$\int_{\Omega} f \circ \tau \, d\mu = \int_{\Lambda} f \, d(\tau_*\mu)$$

for all  $f \in C_0(\Lambda)$  by Dominated Convergence.

Thus, we can see that for any  $\tau : \Omega \rightarrow \Lambda$  that is a proper map between locally compact Hausdorff spaces, then  $T_{\tau}^*(\varphi_{\mu}) = \varphi_{\tau_*\mu}$  for all  $\mu \in M_r(\Omega)$ .

$$\begin{aligned} T_{\tau}^*(\varphi_{\mu})(f) &= \varphi_{\mu} \circ T_{\tau}(f) \\ &= \varphi_{\mu}(f \circ \tau) \\ &= \int_{\Omega} f \circ \tau \, d\mu \\ &= \int_{\Lambda} f \, d(\tau_*\mu) \\ &= \varphi_{\tau_*\mu}(f). \end{aligned}$$

This also shows that the push forward of a regular complex Borel measure is regular, or  $\tau_*(M_r(\Omega)) \subseteq M_r(\Lambda)$ .

Suppose we are dealing with the special case of  $\tau : \Omega \rightarrow \Lambda$  is a homeomorphism. Then,  $T_{\tau}$  is an isometric isomorphism of Banach spaces, meaning

$$T_{\tau}^* : C_0(\Omega)^* \rightarrow C_0(\Lambda)^*,$$

or

$$\tau_* : M_r(\Omega) \rightarrow M_r(\Lambda),$$

is an isometric isomorphism of Banach spaces. The restriction to the state space

$$T_{\tau}^*|_{S(\Omega)} : S(\Omega) \rightarrow S(\Lambda),$$

or

$$\tau_*|_{\mathcal{P}_r(\Omega)} : \mathcal{P}_r(\Omega) \rightarrow \mathcal{P}_r(\Lambda)$$

is an affine bijection.

This allows us to consider the idea of an *invariant* measure (or, equivalently, invariant state).

**Definition.** Let  $\Omega$  be a locally compact state, and let  $\tau : \Omega \rightarrow \Omega$  be a continuous transformation. A regular Borel probability measure,  $\mu \in \mathcal{P}_r(\Omega)$  is called  $\tau$ -invariant if  $\tau_*\mu = \mu$ , or  $T_{\tau}^*(\varphi_{\mu}) = \varphi_{\mu}$ . We write

$$\mathcal{P}_r(\Omega, \tau) := \{\mu \in \mathcal{P}_r(\Omega) \mid \tau_*\mu = \mu\}$$

to denote the set of  $\tau$ -invariant measures.

We can now use the analytic and algebraic properties of adjoints to identify duals of subspaces and quotient spaces. Recall that for a normed vector space  $X$  and  $E \subseteq X$  a subset, then

$$E^\perp = \{\varphi \in X^* \mid \varphi|_E = 0\}$$

is the annihilator of  $E$ .

**Proposition:** Let  $X$  be a normed vector space,  $E \subseteq X$  a subspace. The dual space of  $E$  is isometrically isomorphic to  $X^*/E^\perp$ .

*Proof.* The embedding  $\iota : E \hookrightarrow X$  is an isometry, so  $\iota^* : X^* \rightarrow E^*$  is a 1-quotient map. The first isomorphism theorem gives  $X^*/\ker(\iota^*) \cong E^*$ . Thus,

$$\begin{aligned} \ker(\iota^*) &= \{\varphi \in X^* \mid \iota^*(\varphi) = 0\} \\ &= \{\varphi \in X^* \mid \varphi \circ \iota = 0\} \\ &= \{\varphi \in X^* \mid \varphi|_E = 0\} \\ &= E^\perp. \end{aligned}$$

□

Now, we can look at the dual of a quotient space.

**Proposition:** Let  $X$  be a normed vector space and  $E \subseteq X$  a closed subspace. Then,  $(X/E)^* \cong E^\perp$ .

*Proof.* Let  $\pi : X \rightarrow X/E$  be the canonical projection map. Since  $\pi$  is a 1-quotient map, we have  $\pi^* : (X/E)^* \rightarrow X^*$  is an isometry, so  $(X/E)^* \cong \text{Ran}(\pi^*)$ . We have

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Ran}(\pi^*) &= \{\pi^*(\psi) \mid \psi \in (X/E)^*\} \\ &= \{\psi \circ \pi \mid \psi \in (X/E)^*\}. \end{aligned}$$

We claim that  $\text{Ran}(\pi^*) = E^\perp$ . For any  $\psi \in (X/E)^*$ , we have  $\psi \circ \pi \in X^*$ , and  $\psi \circ \pi|_E = 0$ , meaning  $\text{Ran}(\pi^*) \subseteq E^\perp$ .

For the reverse direction, if  $\varphi \in E^\perp$ , and  $\varphi : X \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  sends  $E$  to 0, then  $\varphi$  factors through  $X/E$ , meaning  $\varphi(x) = \tilde{\varphi}(x + E)$  for some bounded linear operator  $\tilde{\varphi}$  such that  $\|\tilde{\varphi}\|_{\text{op}} = \|\varphi\|_{\text{op}}$ . Thus,  $\tilde{\varphi} \circ \pi = \varphi$ , so  $\varphi \in \text{Ran}(\pi^*)$ , so  $\text{Ran}(\pi^*) = E^\perp$ .

Thus, we have  $(X/E)^* \cong \text{Ran}(\pi^*) \cong E^\perp$ .

□

**Proposition** (Existence of Auerbach Basis): Let  $X$  be a finite dimensional normed vector space. Then, there exists a collection  $\{u_1, \dots, u_n\} \subseteq S_X$  that forms a basis for  $X$ , and a collection  $\{\varphi_1, \dots, \varphi_n\} \subseteq S_{X^*}$  that forms a basis for  $X^*$ , such that  $\varphi_i(u_j) = \delta_{ij}$ . We call the collection  $\{(u_i, \varphi_i)\}_{i=1}^n$  an Auerbach basis for  $X$ .

*Proof.* Let  $\theta : X \rightarrow \ell_\infty^n$  be a bicontinuous isomorphism. Consider the map

$$D : \underbrace{B_X \times \dots \times B_X}_{n \text{ times}} \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$$

defined by

$$D(x_1, \dots, x_n) = \det(\theta(x_1) \quad \theta(x_2) \quad \dots \quad \theta(x_n)),$$

where  $\theta(x_n)$  are column vectors. It is the case that  $D$  is continuous, as  $D$  is a polynomial over its entries, and since  $B_X \times \dots \times B_X$  is compact (as  $B_X$  is compact, and the finite product of compact sets is compact), we must have

$$\max_{x_j \in B_X} |D(x_1, \dots, x_n)| = |D(u_1, \dots, u_n)|$$

$$:= M$$

for some  $u_1, \dots, u_n \in B_X \times \dots \times B_X$ . Define  $\varphi : X \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  by

$$\varphi_k(x) = \frac{1}{M} D(u_1, \dots, x, \dots, u_n),$$

where  $x$  is in the  $k$ th index. Since  $D$  is multilinear,  $\varphi$  is linear. Additionally,  $|\varphi_k(x)| \leq 1$  for each  $B_x$ , so  $\|\varphi_k\|_{\text{op}} \leq 1$ , while  $|\varphi_k(u_k)| = 1$ , so  $\|\varphi_k\|_{\text{op}} = 1$ .

Let  $\omega_k = \text{sgn}(\varphi_k(u_k))$ , and set  $v_k = \omega_k u_k$ . Then,  $\varphi_k(v_j) = \delta_{jk}$ .

If  $D(x_1, \dots, x_n) = 0$ , then  $\{\theta(x_1), \dots, \theta(x_n)\}$  is linearly dependent in  $\mathbb{F}^n$ , and since  $\theta$  is a linear isomorphism, then  $\{x_1, \dots, x_n\}$  is linearly dependent. Thus,  $\{v_1, \dots, v_n\}$  is a basis for  $X$ .

Similarly, if

$$\sum_{i=1}^n \alpha_i \varphi_i = 0,$$

then

$$\sum_{i=1}^n \alpha_i \varphi_i(v_j) = 0,$$

so  $\alpha_j = 0$  for each  $j$ .

□

**Proposition:** Let  $E \subseteq X$  be a subspace of a normed vector space  $X$ . If  $E$  is finite-dimensional, then  $E$  is topologically complemented — i.e., there exists  $F \subseteq X$  closed such that  $X = E \oplus F$ , or, equivalently, there exists  $P \in \mathcal{B}(X)$  with  $P^2 = P$  and  $\text{Ran}(P) = E$ .

*Proof.* Since  $\dim(E) = n$ ,  $E$  admits an Auerbach basis,  $\{(u_i, \varphi_i)\}_{i=1}^n$ . For each  $i \in \{1, \dots, n\}$ , the Hahn–Banach theorem allows an extension to  $\psi_i \in X^*$  with  $\|\varphi_i\|_{\text{op}} = \|\psi_i\|_{\text{op}} = 1$ .

We will define  $P : X \rightarrow X$  by

$$P(x) = \sum_{k=1}^n \psi_k(x) u_k.$$

We can see that  $P$  is linear, and  $\text{Ran}(P) \subseteq E$ . Note that  $P(y) = y$  for all  $y \in E$ , since

$$\begin{aligned} P(u_j) &= \sum_{k=1}^n \psi_k(u_j) u_k \\ &= \sum_{k=1}^n \varphi_k(u_j) u_k \\ &= \sum_{k=1}^n \delta_{kj} u_k \\ &= u_j \end{aligned}$$

for each  $j$ . It follows that, for  $y = \sum_{j=1}^n \alpha_j u_j$ ,

$$P(y) = \sum_{j=1}^n \alpha_j P(u_j)$$

$$\begin{aligned}
&= \sum_{j=1}^n \alpha_j u_j \\
&= y.
\end{aligned}$$

Thus,  $\text{Ran}(P) = E$  and  $P^2 = P$ . □

**Exercise:** If  $Z$  is a normed vector space with  $z_0 \in Z$  and  $\psi \in Z^*$  fixed, prove that the map  $T : Z \rightarrow Z$  defined by  $T(z) = \psi(z)z_0$  is continuous.

**Solution:**

$$\begin{aligned}
\|T(z)\| &= \|\psi(z)z_0\| \\
&= \|z_0\| \|\psi(z)\| \\
&\leq \|z_0\| \|\psi\|_{\text{op}} \|z\|,
\end{aligned}$$

meaning  $\|T\|_{\text{op}} \leq \|z_0\| \|\psi\|_{\text{op}}$ , so  $T$  is bounded.

## Properties of Reflexive Spaces

**Definition.** A normed vector space  $X$  is reflexive if  $\iota_X : X \hookrightarrow X^{**}$  is surjective.

**Proposition:** Let  $X$  be a normed vector space,  $E \subseteq X$  a subspace. The following are true.

- (1) If  $X$  is finite-dimensional, then  $X$  is reflexive.
- (2) If  $X$  is reflexive, then  $E$  is reflexive.
- (3) If  $X$  is reflexive, then  $X/E$  is reflexive.
- (4)  $X$  is reflexive if and only if  $X^*$  is reflexive.

*Proof.* To prove (1), let  $\mathcal{B} = \{u_1, \dots, u_n\}$  be a basis for  $X$ . Since  $X$  is finite-dimensional, all linear operators on  $X$  are continuous. In particular,  $X^* = X' = \mathcal{L}(X, \mathbb{F})$ . Consider the linear functional  $\varepsilon_i : X \rightarrow \mathbb{F}$  defined by

$$\varepsilon_i \left( \sum_{j=1}^n \alpha_j u_j \right) = \alpha_i.$$

Then  $\mathcal{B}' = \{\varepsilon_1, \dots, \varepsilon_n\}$  is a basis for  $X^*$ , so  $\dim(X) = \dim(X^*)$ . Similarly,  $\dim(X^*) = \dim(X^{**})$ . Since  $\iota_X : X \rightarrow X^{**}$  is injective, the rank-nullity theorem has  $\iota_X$  is also surjective. Thus,  $X$  is reflexive.

To prove (2), we can see that if  $\iota_X : X \rightarrow X^{**}$  is a bijection, then  $\iota_X|_E : E \rightarrow E^{**}$  is also a bijection, so  $E$  is reflexive.

To see the forward direction of (4), we let  $X$  be reflexive, and consider  $\iota_{X^*} : X^* \hookrightarrow X^{***}$ . We will show that  $\iota_{X^*}$  is surjective.

Let  $h \in X^{***}$ , so  $h : X^{**} \rightarrow \mathbb{F}$  is bounded linear. Let  $\varphi = h \circ \iota_X \in X^*$ .

We claim that  $\iota_{X^*}(\varphi) = h$ . In order to do this, we will show that  $\iota_{X^*}(\varphi)(\xi) = h(\xi)$  for all  $\xi \in X^{**}$ . For each  $\xi \in X^{**}$ , we know that  $\xi = \iota_X(x) = \hat{x}$  for some  $x \in X$  since  $X$  is reflexive. Thus,

$$\begin{aligned}
\iota_{X^*}(\varphi)(\xi) &= \hat{\varphi}(\xi) \\
&= \xi(\varphi) \\
&= \hat{x}(\varphi) \\
&= \varphi(x).
\end{aligned}$$

Alternatively, we have

$$\begin{aligned} h(\xi) &= h(\hat{x}) \\ &= h(\iota_X(x)) \\ &= h \circ \iota_X(x) \\ &= \varphi(x). \end{aligned}$$

For the converse, assuming  $X^*$  is reflexive, we have shown that  $X^{**}$  is reflexive. However, since  $\iota_X(X) \subseteq X^{**}$ , it is the case that  $X$  is reflexive.  $\square$

## Tensor Products in Vector Spaces

In order to understand tensor products and their norms in the case of Banach spaces, we begin by examining tensor products and linear functionals over general vector spaces.

**Definition** (Bilinear Map). Let  $X, Y, Z$  be vector spaces.

A map  $b : X \times Y \rightarrow Z$  is bilinear if for all  $x \in X$  and  $y \in Y$ ,  $b(x, \cdot) : Y \rightarrow Z$  and  $b(\cdot, y) : X \rightarrow Z$  are linear.

We write  $\text{Bil}(X, Y; Z)$  to denote the collection of all bilinear maps with domain  $X \times Y$  and codomain  $Z$ .

**Definition** (Tensor Product). Let  $X$  and  $Y$  be  $\mathbb{F}$ -vector spaces. A tensor product of  $X$  and  $Y$  is a pair  $(V, b)$  where  $V$  is a  $\mathbb{F}$ -vector space and  $b : X \times Y \rightarrow V$  is a bilinear map satisfying the universal property where, for any vector space  $Z$  and any bilinear map  $\beta : X \times Y \rightarrow Z$ , there is a unique linear map  $T_\beta$  such that  $T_\beta \circ b = \beta$ .

The following diagram commutes.

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X \times Y & \xrightarrow{b} & V \\ & \searrow \beta & \downarrow \exists! T_\beta \\ & & Z \end{array}$$

**Fact.** Let  $X$  and  $Y$  be vector spaces, and suppose  $(V, b)$  and  $(V', b')$  are tensor products of  $X$  and  $Y$ . Then,  $V$  and  $V'$  are linearly isomorphic.

*Proof.* Consider the following diagram depicting the universal property on  $V$  and  $V'$ .

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} & & V' & & \\ & \nearrow b' & & \searrow T'_\beta & \\ X \times Y & & & & Z \\ & \searrow b & & \nearrow T_\beta & \\ & & V & & \end{array}$$

Since  $T_\beta = T'_\beta$ , it is the case that  $T_\beta$  and  $T'_\beta$  agree on the bases of  $V$  and  $V'$  respectively. Thus,  $V$  and  $V'$  are linearly isomorphic.  $\square$

We can now construct tensor products.

Let  $X$  and  $Y$  be vector spaces over  $\mathbb{F}$ . We consider the set  $X \times Y$ , and consider the free vector space,  $\mathbb{F}(X \times Y)$ . The space  $\mathbb{F}(X \times Y)$  has basis  $\{\delta_{(x,y)} \mid x \in X, y \in Y\}$ , where  $\delta_{(x,y)}$  are defined by

$$\delta_{(x,y)}(x', y') = \begin{cases} 1 & x = x', y = y', \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}.$$

Let  $N = \text{span}(E_1 \cup E_2 \cup E_3 \cup E_4)$ , where we define

$$\begin{aligned} E_1 &:= \{\delta_{(x_1+x_2, y)} - \delta_{(x_1, y)} - \delta_{(x_2, y)} \mid x_1, x_2 \in X, y \in Y\} \\ E_2 &:= \{\delta_{(x, y_1+y_2)} - \delta_{(x, y_1)} - \delta_{(x, y_2)} \mid x \in X, y_1, y_2 \in Y\} \\ E_3 &:= \{\delta_{(\alpha x, y)} - \alpha \delta_{(x, y)} \mid x \in X, y \in Y, \alpha \in \mathbb{F}\} \\ E_4 &:= \{\delta_{(x, \alpha y)} - \alpha \delta_{(x, y)} \mid x \in X, y \in Y, \alpha \in \mathbb{F}\}. \end{aligned}$$

We define the tensor product of  $X$  and  $Y$  as  $X \otimes Y = \mathbb{F}(X \times Y) / N$ .<sup>xvi</sup> Elementary tensors are of the form  $x \otimes y = \delta_{(x, y)} + N$ . The following are some equivalences over  $\otimes$  that follow our definition of the tensor product.

**Lemma:** Let  $X, Y$  be  $\mathbb{F}$ -vector spaces. Then, for  $x, x_1, x_2 \in X, y, y_1, y_2 \in Y$ , and  $\alpha \in \mathbb{F}$ , we have

- $\alpha(x \otimes y) = \alpha x \otimes y = x \otimes \alpha y$ ;
- $(x_1 + x_2) \otimes y = x_1 \otimes y + x_2 \otimes y$ ;
- $x \otimes (y_1 + y_2) = x \otimes y_1 + x \otimes y_2$ .

The natural map  $b : X \times Y \rightarrow X \otimes Y$  defined by  $b(x, y) = x \otimes y$  is, as a result, bilinear. Additionally,  $0_{X \otimes Y} = 0_X \otimes y = x \otimes 0_Y$  for any  $x, y$ .

**Proposition** (Existence of Tensor Product): Let  $X, Y$  be  $\mathbb{F}$ -vector spaces, and  $X \otimes Y$  be defined as above. Let  $b : X \times Y \rightarrow X \otimes Y$  also be defined as above. Then, the pair  $(X \otimes Y, b)$  is a tensor product.

*Proof.* We need to show the universal property. Let  $Z$  be a space, and suppose  $\beta : X \times Y \rightarrow Z$  is a bilinear map.

By the universal property of the free vector space, there is a unique linear map  $\bar{\beta} : \mathbb{F}(X \times Y) \rightarrow Z$  satisfying  $\bar{\beta}(\delta_{(x, y)}) = \beta(x, y)$ .

Note that, for  $x_1, x_2 \in X$  and  $y \in Y$ , we have

$$\begin{aligned} \bar{\beta}(\delta_{(x_1+x_2, y)} - \delta_{(x_1, y)} - \delta_{(x_2, y)}) &= \bar{\beta}(\delta_{(x_1+x_2, y)}) - \bar{\beta}(\delta_{(x_1, y)}) - \bar{\beta}(\delta_{(x_2, y)}) \\ &= \beta(x_1 + x_2, y) - \beta(x_1, y) - \beta(x_2, y) \\ &= \beta(x_1, y) + \beta(x_2, y) - \beta(x_1, y) - \beta(x_2, y) \\ &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

Similarly, this means  $\bar{\beta}$  sends  $E_1 \cup E_2 \cup E_3 \cup E_4$  to 0, meaning  $\bar{\beta}$  send  $N$  to 0.

By the First Isomorphism Theorem, there is a unique linear map  $T_\beta : \mathbb{F}(X \times Y) / N \rightarrow Z$  satisfying  $T_\beta \circ \pi = \bar{\beta}$ , where  $\pi$  is the canonical quotient map.

Thus, we have

$$\begin{aligned} T_\beta \circ b(x, y) &= T_\beta(x \otimes y) \\ &= T_\beta \circ \pi(\delta_{(x, y)}) \\ &= \bar{\beta}(\delta_{(x, y)}) \\ &= \beta(x, y). \end{aligned}$$

The uniqueness of  $T_\beta$  follows from the fact that  $X \otimes Y$  is spanned by elementary tensors. □

We can now turn our attention to tensor products of linear operators and linear functionals.

<sup>xvi</sup>The construction of  $N$  essentially “mods out” all the expected relations between inputs of a bilinear map. For instance,  $b(x_1 + x_2, y) = b(x_1, y) + b(x_2, y)$ .

**Proposition:** Let  $X, Y, V, W$  be vector spaces over  $\mathbb{F}$ .

- (1) If  $T \in \mathcal{L}(X, V)$  and  $S \in \mathcal{L}(Y, W)$ , there is a unique linear map

$$T \otimes S : X \otimes Y \rightarrow V \otimes W$$

satisfying  $T \otimes S(x \otimes y) = T(x) \otimes S(y)$  for all  $x \in X$  and  $y \in Y$ .

- (2) For every  $\varphi \in X'$  and  $\psi \in Y'$ , there is a linear map  $\varphi \times \psi \in (X \otimes Y)'$  satisfying  $(\varphi \times \psi)(x \otimes y) = \varphi(x)\psi(y)$  for all  $x \in X$  and  $y \in Y$ .

*Proof.*

- (1) The map  $X \times Y \rightarrow V \otimes W$  given by  $(x, y) \mapsto T(x) \otimes S(y)$  is a bilinear map. Thus, by the universal property, there is a unique linear map  $T \otimes S : X \otimes Y \rightarrow V \otimes W$  satisfying the required condition.
- (2) The map  $X \times Y \rightarrow \mathbb{F}$  given by  $(x, y) \mapsto \varphi(x)\psi(y)$  is bilinear, meaning the universal property gives a map  $\varphi \times \psi : X \otimes Y \rightarrow \mathbb{F}$ .

□

**Proposition:** Let  $X$  and  $Y$  be vector spaces over  $\mathbb{F}$ . If  $\{x_1, \dots, x_n\}$  is linearly independent and

$$\sum_{j=1}^n x_j \otimes y_j = 0,$$

then  $y_j = 0$  for all  $j$ .

*Proof.* For every  $\varphi \in X'$  and  $\psi \in Y'$ , we have

$$\begin{aligned} 0 &= (\varphi \times \psi) \left( \sum_{j=1}^n x_j \otimes y_j \right) \\ &= \sum_{j=1}^n \varphi(x_j) \psi(y_j) \\ &= \sum_{j=1}^n \varphi(\psi(y_j) x_j) \\ &= \varphi \left( \sum_{j=1}^n \psi(y_j) x_j \right), \end{aligned}$$

meaning  $\sum_{j=1}^n \psi(y_j) x_j = 0$ . Since  $x_j$  are linearly independent,  $\psi(y_j) = 0$  for all  $j$  and all  $\psi$ , so  $y_j = 0$ . □

## Tensor Products of Banach Spaces

Now that we have a better understanding of tensor products (especially the dual space of a tensor product), we can start examining norms on tensor products of Banach spaces.

### Injective Tensor Product

We start by defining the injective norm. We know that for  $\varphi \in X'$  and  $\psi \in Y'$ , there is a linear functional  $\varphi \times \psi \in (X \otimes Y)'$  that satisfies  $(\varphi \times \psi)(x \otimes y) = \varphi(x)\psi(y)$ .

We can translate this into a norm on any normed spaces  $X$  and  $Y$ , since  $X^* \subseteq X'$  and  $Y^* \subseteq Y'$ .



**Proposition:** Let  $X$  and  $Y$  be normed vector spaces. Given  $t \in X \otimes Y$ , we define

$$\|t\|_V = \sup_{\varphi \in B_{X^*}, \psi \in B_{Y^*}} |(\varphi \times \psi)(t)|$$

to be the injective norm on  $X \otimes Y$ . The injective norm has the cross property — that is,

$$\|x \otimes y\|_V = \|x\| \|y\|$$

for all  $x \in X$  and  $y \in Y$ .

*Proof.* We start by showing the supremum is finite. For any representation

$$t = \sum_{k=1}^n x_k \otimes y_k,$$

and any  $\varphi \in B_{X^*}, \psi \in B_{Y^*}$ , we have

$$\begin{aligned} \|(\varphi \times \psi)(t)\| &= \left| \sum_{k=1}^n \varphi(x_k) \psi(y_k) \right| \\ &\leq \sum_{k=1}^n |\varphi(x_k)| |\psi(y_k)| \\ &\leq \sum_{k=1}^n \|x_k\| \|y_k\|, \end{aligned}$$

recalling that  $\|x\| = \sup_{\varphi \in B_{X^*}} |\varphi(x)|$ .

The triangle inequality and homogeneity of the injective norm are clear from its definition. We will now prove that the norm is positive definite.

Let  $\|t\|_V = 0$ . We express  $t$  as

$$t = \sum_{k=1}^n x_k \otimes y_k,$$

where  $\{y_1, \dots, y_n\}$  are linearly independent.

We have that for all  $\varphi \in B_{X^*}$  and  $\psi \in B_{Y^*}$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} 0 &= (\varphi \times \psi)(t) \\ &= \sum_{k=1}^n \varphi(x_k) \psi(y_k) \\ &= \psi \left( \sum_{k=1}^n \varphi(x_k) y_k \right). \end{aligned}$$

Since this is true for all  $\psi \in B_{Y^*}$ , the Hahn–Banach separation result holds that

$$\sum_{k=1}^n \varphi(x_k) y_k = 0$$

in  $Y$ . Since  $\{y_1, \dots, y_n\}$  are linearly independent, we also get that  $\varphi(x_k) = 0$  for all  $k$  and all  $\varphi \in B_{X^*}$ , so  $x_k = 0$  for all  $k$ , and  $t = 0$ .

To see that the injective norm is cross, we have  $\sup_{\varphi \in B_{Z^*}} |\varphi(z)| = \|z\|$ . Thus,

$$\begin{aligned} \|x \otimes y\|_V &= \sup_{\varphi \in B_{X^*}, \psi \in B_{Y^*}} |\varphi(x)\psi(y)| \\ &= \sup_{\varphi \in B_{X^*}} |\varphi(x)| \sup_{\psi \in B_{Y^*}} |\psi(y)| \\ &= \|x\| \|y\|. \end{aligned}$$

□

**Definition.** If  $X$  and  $Y$  are normed spaces, the completion of  $X \otimes Y$  with respect to the injective norm  $\|\cdot\|_V$  is called the injective tensor product of  $X$  and  $Y$ , denoted  $X \check{\otimes} Y$ .

**Exercise:** Let  $X$  and  $Y$  be normed spaces, and let  $\varphi \in X^*$ ,  $\psi \in Y^*$ . Show that  $\varphi \times \psi \in (X \check{\otimes} Y)^*$ , and  $\|\varphi \times \psi\| = \|\varphi\| \|\psi\|$ .

**Solution:** Let  $\varphi \times \psi \in (X \check{\otimes} Y)^*$ . Then,

$$\begin{aligned} \|\varphi \times \psi\| &= \sup_{\|x \otimes y\|_V = 1} |(\varphi \times \psi)(x \otimes y)| \\ &= \sup_{\|x \otimes y\|_V = 1} |\varphi(x)| |\psi(y)| \\ &= \sup_{\|x\| \|y\| = 1} |\varphi(x)| |\psi(y)| \\ &= \|\varphi\| \|\psi\|. \end{aligned}$$

Thanks to the injective tensor product, we are able to continuously extend bounded linear operators in a manner that preserves operator norm.

**Proposition:** Let  $X, Y, V, W$  be normed vector spaces, and let  $T \in \mathcal{B}(X, V)$ ,  $S \in \mathcal{B}(Y, W)$ .

- (1) The operator  $T \otimes S : X \otimes Y \rightarrow V \otimes W$  is continuous with respect to the injective norm, and extends continuously to a bounded linear operator  $T \check{\otimes} S \in \mathcal{B}(X \check{\otimes} Y, V \check{\otimes} W)$  with  $\|T \check{\otimes} S\|_{\text{op}} = \|T\|_{\text{op}} \|S\|_{\text{op}}$ .
- (2) If  $T$  and  $S$  are isometric, so is  $T \check{\otimes} S$ .

*Proof.* Set  $T_1 = \frac{1}{\|T\|_{\text{op}}} T$ , and  $S_1 = \frac{1}{\|S\|_{\text{op}}} S$ . Let  $t = \sum_{k=1}^n x_k \otimes y_k$  in  $X \otimes Y$ . Then,

$$\begin{aligned} \|T \otimes S(t)\|_V &= \left\| \sum_{k=1}^n T(x_k) \otimes S(y_k) \right\|_V \\ &= \sup_{\varphi \in B_{V^*}, \psi \in B_{W^*}} \left| \sum_{k=1}^n \varphi(T(x_k)) \psi(S(y_k)) \right| \\ &= \|T\| \|S\| \sup_{\varphi \in B_{V^*}, \psi \in B_{W^*}} \left| \sum_{k=1}^n \varphi(T_1(x_k)) \psi(S_1(y_k)) \right| \\ &= \|T\| \|S\| \sup_{\varphi \in B_{V^*}, \psi \in B_{W^*}} \left| \sum_{k=1}^n T_1^*(\varphi)(x_k) S_1^*(\psi)(y_k) \right| \\ &\leq \|T\| \|S\| \sup_{\omega \in B_{X^*}, \tau \in B_{Y^*}} \left| \sum_{k=1}^n \omega(x_k) \tau(y_k) \right| \\ &= \|T\| \|S\| \|t\|_V. \end{aligned}$$

The inequality in the final line follows from the fact that  $T_1$  and  $S_1$  are contractions, so  $T_1^*(B_{V^*}) \subseteq B_{X^*}$  and  $S_1^*(B_{W^*}) \subseteq B_{Y^*}$ . Thus, we have  $\|T \otimes S\| \leq \|T\| \|S\|$ .

If  $x \in B_X$  and  $y \in B_Y$ , then  $\|x \otimes y\|_V = \|x\| \|y\| \leq 1$ . Thus,

$$\begin{aligned} \|T \otimes S\| &\geq \|T(x) \otimes S(y)\|_V \\ &= \|T(x)\| \|S(y)\|. \end{aligned}$$

Taking the supremum, we get

$$\|T \otimes S\| \geq \|T\| \|S\|.$$

The norm-preserving continuous extension to  $T \otimes S$  follows from the norm-preserving continuous extension to the completion in the case of an ordinary Banach space.

If  $T$  and  $S$  are isometries, then  $T_1 = T$  and  $S_1 = S$ , so  $T_1^*(B_{V^*}) = B_{X^*}$  and  $S_1^*(B_{W^*}) = B_{Y^*}$ . Thus,  $T \otimes S$  is an isometry.  $\square$

**Proposition:** Let  $X$  and  $Y$  be normed spaces. There is a canonical isometric embedding  $X \otimes Y \hookrightarrow \mathcal{B}(Y^*, X)$ .

*Proof.* For  $x \in X$  and  $y \in Y$ , we consider the linear map  $\theta_{x,y} : Y^* \rightarrow X$  given by  $\theta_{x,y}(\varphi) = \varphi(y)x$ . By the Hahn–Banach theorems,  $\|\theta_{x,y}\| = \|x\| \|y\|$ .

Next, the map  $X \times Y \rightarrow \mathcal{B}(Y^*, X)$  given by  $(x, y) \mapsto \theta_{x,y}$  is bilinear. Thus, there is a unique linear map  $u : X \otimes Y \rightarrow \mathcal{B}(Y^*, X)$  with  $x \otimes y \mapsto \theta_{x,y}$ .

Let  $t = \sum_{k=1}^n x_k \otimes y_k$  in  $X \otimes Y$ . Then,

$$\begin{aligned} \|u(t)\| &= \left\| \sum_{k=1}^n \theta_{x_k, y_k} \right\| \\ &= \sup_{\psi \in B_{Y^*}} \left\| \left( \sum_{k=1}^n \theta_{x_k, y_k} \right) (\psi) \right\| \\ &= \sup_{\psi \in B_{Y^*}} \left\| \sum_{k=1}^n \psi(y_k) x_k \right\| \\ &= \sup_{\psi \in B_{Y^*}, \varphi \in B_{X^*}} \left| \varphi \left( \sum_{k=1}^n \psi(y_k) x_k \right) \right| \\ &= \sup_{\psi \in B_{Y^*}, \varphi \in B_{X^*}} \left| \sum_{k=1}^n \psi(y_k) \varphi(x_k) \right| \\ &= \|t\|_V. \end{aligned}$$

Note that we use the Hahn–Banach norming results to convert from  $\|x\|$  to  $\varphi(x)$  and vice versa.

Thus,  $u$  is an isometry, so  $u$  extends to an isometry  $U : X \otimes Y^* \hookrightarrow \mathcal{B}(Y^*, X)$ .  $\square$

**Remark:** We can construct similar isometric embeddings  $X \otimes Y \hookrightarrow \mathcal{B}(X^*, Y)$ . These embeddings yield other injective norms.

$$\begin{aligned} \left\| \sum_{k=1}^n x_k \otimes y_k \right\|_V &= \sup_{\psi \in B_{Y^*}} \left\| \sum_{k=1}^n \psi(y_k) x_k \right\| \\ &= \sup_{\varphi \in B_{X^*}} \left\| \sum_{k=1}^n \varphi(x_k) y_k \right\|. \end{aligned}$$

**Example.** Let  $\Omega$  and  $\Lambda$  be compact Hausdorff spaces. We claim that

$$C(\Omega) \otimes C(\Lambda) \cong C(\Omega \times \Lambda).$$

For  $f \in C(\Omega)$  and  $g \in C(\Lambda)$ , there is a continuous function  $f \times g : \Omega \times \Lambda \rightarrow \mathbb{F}$  given by  $(f \times g)(x, y) = f(x)g(y)$ .

Since  $(f, g) \mapsto f \times g$  is a bilinear map from  $C(\Omega) \times C(\Lambda)$  to  $C(\Omega \times \Lambda)$ , there is a unique linear map  $u : C(\Omega) \otimes C(\Lambda) \rightarrow C(\Omega \times \Lambda)$  satisfying  $u(f \otimes g) = f \times g$ . We will show that  $u$  is isometric under the injective norm.

If  $t = \sum_{k=1}^n f_k \otimes g_k$  in  $C(\Omega) \otimes C(\Lambda)$ , then

$$\begin{aligned} \|t\|_v &= \sup_{\psi \in B_{C(\Lambda)^*}} \left\| \sum_{k=1}^n \psi(g_k) f_k \right\| \\ &= \sup_{\psi \in B_{C(\Lambda)^*}} \sup_{x \in \Omega} \left| \sum_{k=1}^n \psi(g_k) f_k(x) \right| \\ &= \sup_{\psi \in B_{C(\Lambda)^*}} \sup_{x \in \Omega} \left| \psi \left( \sum_{k=1}^n g_k f_k(x) \right) \right| \\ &= \sup_{x \in \Omega} \left\| \sum_{k=1}^n f_k(x) g_k \right\| \\ &= \sup_{x \in \Omega, y \in \Lambda} \left| \sum_{k=1}^n f_k(x) g_k(y) \right| \\ &= \sup_{(x, y) \in \Omega \times \Lambda} \left| \sum_{k=1}^n (f_k \times g_k)((x, y)) \right| \\ &= \left\| \sum_{k=1}^n (f_k \times g_k) \right\| \\ &= \|u(t)\|. \end{aligned}$$

Thus,  $u$  extends to an isometry,  $C(\Omega) \otimes C(\Lambda) \rightarrow C(\Omega \times \Lambda)$ .

We will now show that  $u$  is onto. Since

$$\begin{aligned} (f_1 \times g_1)(f_2 \times g_2) &= f_1 f_2 \times g_1 g_2 \\ \overline{(f \times g)} &= \bar{f} \times \bar{g} \\ \mathbb{1}_\Omega \times \mathbb{1}_\Lambda &= \mathbb{1}_{\Omega \times \Lambda}, \end{aligned}$$

we see that  $\text{span}\{f \times g \mid f \in C(\Omega), g \in C(\Lambda)\}$  is a self-adjoint, unital, separating subalgebra of  $C(\Omega \times \Lambda)$ . Thus, by the Stone–Weierstrass theorem,  $\overline{\text{Ran}(u)} = C(\Omega \times \Lambda)$ . However, since  $u$  is isometric, its range is closed, meaning  $u$  is surjective.

### Projective Tensor Product

Loosely speaking, the projective tensor product preserves the space of bilinear forms,  $\text{Bil}(X, Y; Z)$ .

**Definition.** Let  $X, Y, Z$  be normed spaces, and let  $b : X \times Y \rightarrow Z$  be a bilinear map. We define the bilinear operator norm as

$$\|b\|_{\text{op}} = \sup_{x \in B_X, y \in B_Y} \|b(x, y)\|.$$

If  $\|b\|_{\text{op}} < \infty$ , then we say  $b$  is bounded bilinear.

**Proposition:** Let  $X, Y, Z$  be normed spaces, and suppose  $b : X \times Y \rightarrow Z$  be bilinear. Then,  $b$  is continuous if and only if  $b$  is bounded bilinear.

**Proposition:** Let  $X, Y, Z$  be Banach spaces. The space of all bounded bilinear maps under pointwise addition and scalar multiplication with the norm  $\|\cdot\|_{\text{op}}$  is a Banach space.

**Proposition:** Let  $X$  and  $Y$  be normed spaces. The formula

$$\|t\|_{\wedge} = \inf \left\{ \sum_{k=1}^n \|x_k\| \|y_k\| \mid t = \sum_{k=1}^n x_k \otimes y_k \right\}$$

defines a norm on  $X \otimes Y$  called the projective norm. The projective norm is a cross norm, and satisfies  $\|t\|_{\vee} \leq \|t\|_{\wedge}$ .

*Proof.* The norm is clearly homogeneous.

If  $t, t' \in X \otimes Y$  and have representations  $t = \sum_{k=1}^n x_k \otimes y_k$  and  $t' = \sum_{j=1}^m u_j \otimes v_j$ , then

$$\begin{aligned} t + t' &= \sum_{k=1}^n x_k \otimes y_k + \sum_{j=1}^m u_j \otimes v_j \\ \|t + t'\|_{\wedge} &\leq \sum_{k=1}^n \|x_k\| \|y_k\| + \sum_{j=1}^m \|u_j\| \|v_j\|. \end{aligned}$$

Taking the infimum over representations of  $t$ , we have

$$\|t + t'\|_{\wedge} \leq \|t\|_{\wedge} + \sum_{j=1}^m \|u_j\| \|v_j\|,$$

and taking the infimum over representations of  $t'$ ,

$$\|t + t'\| \leq \|t\|_{\wedge} + \|t'\|_{\wedge}.$$

Note that for  $t = \sum_{k=1}^n x_k \otimes y_k$ , we have

$$\begin{aligned} \|t\|_{\vee} &= \sup_{\varphi \in B_{X^*}, \psi \in B_{Y^*}} \left| \sum_{k=1}^n \varphi(x_k) \psi(y_k) \right| \\ &\leq \sum_{k=1}^n |\varphi(x_k)| |\psi(y_k)| \\ &\leq \sum_{k=1}^n \|x_k\| \|y_k\|. \end{aligned}$$

Taking the infimum over all representations, we have  $\|t\|_{\vee} \leq \|t\|_{\wedge}$ .

If  $\|t\|_{\wedge} = 0$ , then  $\|t\|_{\vee} = 0$ , so  $t = 0$  since  $\|t\|_{\vee}$  is a norm.

For  $x \in X$  and  $y \in Y$ , we have

$$\begin{aligned} \|x\| \|y\| &= \|x \otimes y\|_{\vee} \\ &\leq \|x \otimes y\|_{\wedge} \\ &\leq \|x\| \|y\|. \end{aligned}$$

□

**Definition.** If  $X$  and  $Y$  are normed spaces, the Banach space completion of  $X \otimes Y$  with respect to the projective norm  $\|\cdot\|_\wedge$  is called the projective tensor product of  $X$  and  $Y$ , denoted  $X \hat{\otimes} Y$ .

**Proposition:** Let  $X, Y, Z$  be normed spaces.

- (1) If  $b$  is bounded bilinear,  $b \in \text{Bil}(X, Y; Z)$ . Then, there is a unique  $T_b \in \mathcal{B}(X \hat{\otimes} Y, Z)$  such that

$$T_b(x \otimes y) = b(x, y),$$

$$\text{and } \|T_b\|_{\text{op}} = \|b\|_{\text{op}}.$$

- (2) If  $T \in \mathcal{B}(X \hat{\otimes} Y, Z)$ , there is a  $b \in \text{Bil}(X, Y; Z)$  with  $T_b = T$ , where  $T_b$  is given as above.  
 (3) The map  $b \mapsto T_b$  from  $\text{Bil}(X, Y; Z)$  to  $\mathcal{B}(X \hat{\otimes} Y, Z)$  is a linear isometric isomorphism.

*Proof.*

- (1) Since  $b$  is bilinear, the universal property for tensor products gives a unique linear  $T_b : X \otimes Y \rightarrow Z$  such that  $T_b(x \otimes y) = b(x, y)$ . For  $t = \sum_{k=1}^n x_k \otimes y_k \in X \otimes Y$ , we have

$$\begin{aligned} \|T_b(t)\| &= \left\| \sum_{k=1}^n b(x_k, y_k) \right\| \\ &\leq \sum_{k=1}^n \|b(x_k, y_k)\| \\ &\leq \sum_{k=1}^n \|b\|_{\text{op}} \|x_k\| \|y_k\|. \end{aligned}$$

Taking the infimum, we have

$$\|T_b(t)\| \leq \|b\|_{\text{op}} \|t\|_\wedge,$$

so

$$\|T_b\|_{\text{op}} \leq \|b\|_{\text{op}}.$$

For  $x \in B_X, y \in B_Y$  we have  $\|x \otimes y\|_\wedge \leq 1$ , meaning

$$\begin{aligned} \|b(x, y)\| &= \|T_b(x \otimes y)\| \\ &\leq \|T_b\|_{\text{op}}. \end{aligned}$$

Taking the supremum, we get  $\|b\|_{\text{op}} \leq \|T_b\|_{\text{op}}$ . It is the case that  $T_b$  has a norm-preserving continuous extension to  $X \hat{\otimes} Y \rightarrow Z$ .

- (2) Define  $b(x, y) = T(x \otimes y)$ . It is the case that  $b$  is bilinear and bounded, since

$$\begin{aligned} \|b(x, y)\| &= \|T(x \otimes y)\| \\ &\leq \|T\|_{\text{op}} \|x \otimes y\|_\wedge \\ &= \|T\|_{\text{op}} \|x\| \|y\|. \end{aligned}$$

Since  $T_b(x \otimes y) = b(x, y) = T(x \otimes y)$ ,  $T$  agrees with  $T_b$  on  $X \otimes Y$ . Since both  $T$  and  $T_b$  are continuous with respect to the projective norm, they agree on  $X \hat{\otimes} Y$ .

- (3) Since  $b \mapsto T_b$  is linear, and we have shown this to be an isometric isomorphism, it is the case that this is an isometric isomorphism.

□

We can now identify the dual of the projective tensor product.

**Proposition:** Let  $X$  and  $Y$  be normed spaces. Then,

$$(X \hat{\otimes} Y)^* \cong \mathcal{B}(X, Y^*)$$

are isometrically isomorphic.

*Proof.* Consider the map  $T : (X \hat{\otimes} Y)^* \rightarrow \mathcal{B}(X, Y^*)$  defined by  $\psi \mapsto T_\psi$ , where  $T_\psi(x)(y) = \psi(x \otimes y)$ . It is the case that  $T_\psi(x)$  is a linear operator on  $Y$ , and

$$\begin{aligned} |T_\psi(x)(y)| &= |\psi(x \otimes y)| \\ &\leq \|\psi\| \|x \otimes y\|_\wedge \\ &= \|\psi\| \|x\| \|y\|, \end{aligned}$$

so  $\|T_\psi(x)\|_{\text{op}} \leq \|\psi\| \|x\|$ , so  $T_\psi \in Y^*$ . It is also clear that  $T_\psi$  is linear on  $x$ , so  $\|T_\psi\|_{\text{op}} \leq \|\psi\|$ , meaning  $T$  is a contraction.

We now define  $\eta : \mathcal{B}(X, Y^*) \rightarrow (X \hat{\otimes} Y)^*$ . Fixing  $T \in \mathcal{B}(X, Y^*)$ , we have a map  $X \times Y \rightarrow \mathbb{F}$  defined by  $T(x)(y)$  that is both bilinear and bounded:

$$\begin{aligned} \sup_{x \in B_X, y \in B_Y} |T(x)(y)| &= \sup_{x \in B_X} \|T(x)\| \\ &= \|T\|. \end{aligned}$$

Thus, there is some  $\eta(T) \in (X \hat{\otimes} Y)^*$  with  $\eta(T)(x \otimes y) = T(x)(y)$ , and  $\|\eta(T)\|_{\text{op}} = \|T\|$ . We have  $\eta$  is linear, and

$$\begin{aligned} \eta(T_\psi)(x \otimes y) &= T_\psi(x)(y) \\ &= \psi(x \otimes y). \end{aligned}$$

Since both  $\eta(T_\psi)$  and  $\psi$  are continuous and linear, we get  $\eta(T_\psi) = \psi$ . Since both  $T$  and  $\eta$  are contractions, we must have  $T$  is an isometric isomorphism.  $\square$

## Finite-Rank and Compact Operators

**Definition.** A linear map  $T : X \rightarrow Y$  between vector spaces is said to be finite-rank if  $\dim(\text{Ran}(T)) < \infty$ .

The collection of finite-rank operators,  $F(X, Y)$ , forms an ideal in  $\mathcal{L}(X, Y)$ .

Not all finite rank operators are bounded, but we can look at ones that are.

**Definition.** Let  $X$  and  $Y$  be normed spaces. We write

$$\mathbb{F}(X, Y) = \mathcal{B}(X, Y) \cap F(X, Y)$$

to denote the set of all bounded finite-rank operators between  $X$  and  $Y$ . We also write  $\mathbb{F}(X) = \mathbb{F}(X, X)$ .

**Proposition:** Let  $X$  and  $Y$  be normed spaces. For each  $x \in X$  and  $\psi \in Y^*$ , there is a rank-one operator

$$L_{x, \psi} : Y \rightarrow X$$

defined by

$$L_{x, \psi}(y) = \psi(y)x.$$

The following are true.

- (1) Each  $L_{x,\psi}$  is bounded with  $\|L_{x,\psi}\|_{\text{op}} = \|\psi\| \|x\|$ .
- (2) The map  $X \times Y^* \rightarrow \mathcal{B}(Y, X)$  mapping  $(x, \psi) \mapsto L_{x,\psi}$  is bilinear.
- (3) Each  $T \in \mathcal{F}(Y, X)$  can be written as

$$T = \sum_{k=1}^n L_{x_k, \psi_k},$$

where  $\{x_1, \dots, x_n\}$  is a Hamel basis for  $\text{Ran}(T)$  and  $\psi_1, \dots, \psi_n \in Y^*$ . Moreover, every operator of this form is bounded and of finite rank.

*Proof.*

- (1) We compute

$$\begin{aligned} \|L_{x,\psi}\|_{\text{op}} &= \sup_{y \in B_Y} \|L_{x,\psi}(y)\| \\ &= \sup_{y \in B_Y} \|\psi(y)x\| \\ &= \sup_{y \in B_Y} |\psi(y)| \|x\| \\ &= \|\psi\|_{\text{op}} \|x\|. \end{aligned}$$

- (2) This is clear from the definition of  $L_{x,\psi}$ .
- (3) Let  $\{x_1, \dots, x_n\}$  be a Hamel basis for  $\text{Ran}(T)$ . There is then a bicontinuous isomorphism  $\varphi : \ell_{\infty}^n \rightarrow \text{Ran}(T)$  with  $\varphi(e_k) = x_k$  for each  $k$ .

We set  $\psi_k = \pi_k \circ \varphi^{-1} \circ T$ , where  $\pi_k : \ell_{\infty}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{F}$  is the projection to the  $k$ th coordinate.

Since  $T$  is bounded,  $\psi_k \in Y^*$ , so for every  $y \in Y$ , we have

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{k=1}^n L_{x_k, \psi_k}(y) &= \sum_{k=1}^n \psi_k(y) x_k \\ &= \sum_{k=1}^n \pi_k \circ \varphi^{-1} \circ T(y) x_k \\ &= \sum_{k=1}^n \pi_k \circ \varphi^{-1} \circ T(y) \varphi(e_k) \\ &= \varphi \left( \sum_{k=1}^n \pi_k \circ \varphi^{-1} \circ T(y) e_k \right) \\ &= \varphi \left( \varphi^{-1}(T(y)) \right) \\ &= T(y). \end{aligned}$$

Here, we use the fact that  $z = \sum_{k=1}^n \pi_k(z) e_k$  for each  $z \in \ell_{\infty}^n$ .

Since  $\text{Ran}(T) \subseteq \text{span}\{x_1, \dots, x_n\}$ ,  $\text{Ran}(T)$  is finite-rank, and is bounded by its definition.

□



**Exercise:** Let  $E = E^2$  be a bounded finite-rank idempotent operator on a Banach space  $X$ . Show that we can write

$$E = \sum_{k=1}^n L_{x_k, \varphi_k},$$

where  $\{x_1, \dots, x_n\}$  is a Hamel basis for  $\text{Ran}(E)$  and  $\varphi_k \in X^*$  with  $\varphi_k(x_j) = \delta_{kj}$ .

**Solution:** Since  $\text{Ran}(E)$  is finite,  $\text{Ran}(E)$  has an Auerbach basis,  $\{(x_i, \varphi_k)\}_{i=1}^n$  such that  $\varphi_i(x_j) = \delta_{ij}$ . We can necessarily write

$$E(x) = \sum_{k=1}^n \varphi_k(x) x_k$$

for each  $x \in X$ , which means

$$E = \sum_{k=1}^n L_{x_k, \varphi_k}.$$

**Proposition:** Let  $X$  and  $Y$  be normed spaces. There is an isometric isomorphism  $L : X \otimes Y^* \rightarrow \mathbb{F}(Y, X)$  with  $X \otimes Y$  equipped with the injective norm. Additionally,  $L$  extends to an isometric isomorphism  $\tilde{L} : X \tilde{\otimes} Y^* \rightarrow \overline{\mathbb{F}(Y, X)}^{\|\cdot\|_{\text{op}}}$ .

*Proof.* For every  $x \in X$  and  $y \in Y^*$ , we consider  $L_{x, \psi} : Y \rightarrow X$  as defined above. By the universal property of tensor products, there is a linear map  $L : X \otimes Y^* \rightarrow \mathcal{B}(Y, X)$  satisfying  $L(x \otimes \psi) = L_{x, \psi}$ .

We will show this map is isometric with  $X \otimes Y^*$  equipped with the injective norm. If  $t = \sum_{k=1}^n x_k \otimes \psi_k$  is in  $X \otimes Y^*$ , then

$$\begin{aligned} \|L(t)\| &= \left\| \sum_{k=1}^n L_{x_k, \psi_k} \right\| \\ &= \sup_{y \in Y} \left\| \left( \sum_{k=1}^n L_{x_k, \psi_k} \right)(y) \right\| \\ &= \sup_{y \in Y} \left\| \sum_{k=1}^n \psi_k(y) x_k \right\| \\ &= \sup_{y \in B_Y, \varphi \in B_{X^*}} \left| \varphi \left( \sum_{k=1}^n \psi_k(y) x_k \right) \right| \\ &= \sup_{y \in B_Y, \varphi \in B_{X^*}} \left| \sum_{k=1}^n \psi_k(y) \varphi(x_k) \right| \\ &= \sup_{y \in B_Y, \varphi \in B_{X^*}} \left| \left( \sum_{k=1}^n \varphi(x_k) \psi_k \right)(y) \right| \\ &= \sup_{\varphi \in B_{X^*}} \left\| \sum_{k=1}^n \varphi(x_k) \psi_k \right\| \\ &= \|t\|_V. \end{aligned}$$

Since  $L$  is surjective, and  $L$  is an isometry, it is the case that  $L$  is an isometric isomorphism. We can extend  $L$  to get an isometric isomorphism  $X \tilde{\otimes} Y^* = \overline{\mathbb{F}(Y, X)}^{\|\cdot\|_{\text{op}}}$ .  $\square$

**Remark:** We can view  $X \otimes Y^*$  as being contained in  $\mathcal{B}(Y, X)$ , since every  $t \in X \otimes Y^*$  represents a finite rank operator from  $Y$  to  $X$  with  $\|t\|_\wedge = \|t\|_{\text{op}}$ .

**Definition.** Let  $X$  and  $Y$  be normed spaces. A linear map  $T : X \rightarrow Y$  is said to be compact if  $\overline{T(B_X)} \subseteq Y$  is compact.

We write  $\mathbb{K}(X, Y)$  to denote the set of all compact operators from  $X$  to  $Y$ .

**Example.** Let  $k : [0, 1]^2 \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  be continuous. Given  $f \in C([0, 1])$ , we define

$$K(f) : [0, 1] \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$$

by

$$K(f)(s) = \int_0^1 k(s, t) f(t) dt.$$

We will show that  $K(f)$  is continuous and that  $K : C([0, 1]) \rightarrow C([0, 1])$  is a compact operator.

Fix  $f \in C([0, 1])$ , and let  $\varepsilon > 0$ . Since  $k$  is uniformly continuous,<sup>xvii</sup> there is  $\delta > 0$  such that if  $(s, t), (s', t') \in [0, 1]^2$  and  $d_2((s, t), (s', t')) < \delta$ , then

$$|k(s, t) - k(s', t')| < \frac{\varepsilon}{\|f\|_u}.$$

If  $|s - s'| < \delta$ , then  $d_2((s, t), (s', t')) < \delta$ , so

$$\begin{aligned} |K(f)(s) - K(f)(s')| &\leq \int_0^1 |k(s, t) - k(s', t)| |f(t)| dt \\ &\leq \int_0^1 \frac{\varepsilon}{\|f\|_u} \|f\| dt \\ &= \varepsilon. \end{aligned}$$

Thus,  $K(f)$  is continuous, so  $K$  is well-defined.

It is the case that  $K$  is linear, and  $\|K\|_{op} \leq \|k\|_u$ .

We will show that  $K$  is a compact operator by using the Arzela–Ascoli theorem. Consider the set

$$\mathcal{F} = \{K(f) \mid f \in C([0, 1]), \|f\|_u \leq 1\}.$$

If  $s \in [0, 1]$ , then  $|K(f)(s)| \leq \|k\|_u$  for all  $f \in B_{C([0, 1])}$ , meaning  $\mathcal{F}$  is pointwise bounded. Similarly, for  $\varepsilon$  and  $\delta$  as in the proof of the well-definedness of  $K$ , then if  $|s - s'| < \delta$ ,  $|K(f)(s) - K(f)(s')| \leq \varepsilon$  for all  $f \in B_{C([0, 1])}$ , meaning  $\mathcal{F}$  is equicontinuous.

By the Arzela–Ascoli theorem,  $\overline{K(B_{C([0, 1])})}$  is compact.

We can characterize compact operators in a variety of ways.

**Proposition:** Let  $X$  and  $Y$  be normed spaces,  $T : X \rightarrow Y$  is a linear map. Then, we have the following.

- (1) If  $T \in \mathbb{F}(X, Y)$ , then  $T$  is compact.
- (2) If  $T \in \mathbb{K}(X, Y)$ , then  $T(B_X)$  is totally bounded in  $Y$ , which implies that  $T \in \mathcal{B}(X, Y)$ . If  $Y$  is a Banach space, then  $T$  is compact if and only if  $T(B_X)$  is totally bounded.
- (3)  $T$  is compact if and only if for every bounded sequence  $(x_n)_n$  in  $X$ , there is a subsequence  $(x_{n_k})_k$  such that  $(T(x_{n_k}))_k$  converges in  $Y$ .

---

<sup>xvii</sup>Continuous and defined over compact domain.

(4) In the following statements:

- (i)  $T(B_X)$  is compact in  $Y$ ;
- (ii)  $T$  is a compact operator;
- (iii)  $T|_{B_X} : (B_X, w) \rightarrow (Y, \|\cdot\|)$  is continuous.

We have (i)  $\Rightarrow$  (ii)  $\Rightarrow$  (iii). If  $X$  is reflexive, then (iii)  $\Rightarrow$  (i).

*Proof.*

- (1) Let  $T$  be bounded and of finite rank. Let  $Z = \text{Ran}(T)$ . Since  $\dim(Z) < \infty$ ,  $B_Z$  is compact, so  $\|T\| B_Z$  is compact. For  $x \in B_X$ , we have  $\frac{T(x)}{\|T\|} \in B_Z$ , so  $T(x) \in \|T\| B_Z$ .
- (2) In metric spaces, compact sets are totally bounded, so if  $T$  is compact, then  $\overline{T(B_X)}$ , hence  $T(B_X)$ , is totally bounded in  $Y$ .

If  $T(B_X)$  is totally bounded, then there exist  $y_1, \dots, y_m$  such that

$$T(B_X) \subseteq \bigcup_{j=1}^m U(y_j, 1).$$

We set  $C = \max_{j=1}^m \{\|y_j\|\} + 1$ , meaning  $\|T\|_{\text{op}} \leq C$ .

If  $Y$  is complete, then total boundedness is equivalent to having compact closure (i.e., precompact).

- (3) Let  $(x_n)_n$  be a sequence in  $X$ . Then, we have  $(\frac{1}{c}x_n)_n$  is a sequence in  $B_X$  for some  $c > 0$ , meaning  $(T(\frac{1}{c}x_n))_n$  is a sequence in  $T(B_X) \subseteq \overline{T(B_X)}$ . Since  $T$  is compact,  $\overline{T(B_X)}$  is compact, so there is a subsequence  $(\frac{1}{c}x_{n_k})_k \rightarrow y$ , so  $(T(x_{n_k}))_k \rightarrow cy$ .

Conversely, let  $(y_n)_n$  be a sequence in  $\overline{T(B_X)}$  with a convergent subsequence. We approximate  $\|y_n - z_n\| < 1/n$ , where  $T(x_n) = z_n$ . By our assumption, there is a subsequence  $(x_{n_k})_k$  such that  $(T(x_{n_k}))_k = z_{n_k} \rightarrow y$  for some  $y \in Y$ . Then,

$$\begin{aligned} \|y_{n_k} - y\| &\leq \|y_{n_k} - z_{n_k}\| + \|z_{n_k} - y\| \\ &\leq \frac{1}{n_k} + \|z_{n_k} - y\| \\ &< \varepsilon, \end{aligned}$$

meaning  $\overline{T(B_X)}$  is sequentially compact, hence compact.

- (4) We can see that (i) implies (ii).

Let  $T$  be compact, and let  $(x_i)_i \rightarrow x$  be a weakly convergent net in  $B_X$ . Consider any subnet  $(T(x_{i_j}))_j$ . Since  $\overline{T(B_X)}$  is compact, there exists a norm-convergent subnet,  $(T(x_{i_{j_k}}))_k \rightarrow y$ . Let  $\varphi \in Y^*$ . Then,

$$\varphi(T(x_{i_{j_k}}))_k \xrightarrow{k \rightarrow \infty} \varphi(y).$$

Note that  $\varphi \circ T \in X^*$ , and  $(x_{i_{j_k}})_k \rightarrow x$ , meaning

$$\varphi \circ T(x_{i_{j_k}})_k \rightarrow \varphi \circ T(x).$$

Thus,  $\varphi \circ T(x) = \varphi(y)$ . Since this is true for all  $\varphi \in Y^*$ , we have  $T(x) = y$ .

We have  $X$  is reflexive if and only if  $(B_X, w)$  is compact. Thus, if  $T|_{B_X} : (B_X, w) \rightarrow (Y, \|\cdot\|)$  is continuous, and  $B_X$  is weakly compact, then  $T(B_X)$  is norm-compact in  $Y$ . This shows (iii) implying (i).

□

**Lemma:** Let  $T : X \rightarrow Y$  be a compact operator between normed spaces. Then,  $\overline{\text{Ran}}(T)$  is separable.

*Proof.* Since  $\overline{T(B_X)}$  is compact, it is separable, so there is a set  $S = \{y_n\}_{n \geq 1}$  in  $\overline{T(B_X)}$  with  $\overline{S} = \overline{T(B_X)}$ .

We claim  $S$  is total<sup>xviii</sup> in  $\overline{\text{Ran}}(T)$ .

Since  $T(B_X) \subseteq \text{Ran}(T)$ , we can take closures to find

$$\begin{aligned} S &\subseteq \overline{T(B_X)} \\ &\subseteq \overline{\text{Ran}}(T). \end{aligned}$$

Since  $\overline{\text{Ran}}(T)$  is a subspace, we have  $\text{span}(S) \subseteq \overline{\text{Ran}}(T)$ . Taking closures yet again, we get  $\overline{\text{span}}(S) \subseteq \overline{\text{Ran}}(T)$ .

If  $x \in X$ , we have

$$\begin{aligned} T(x) &= \|x\| T\left(\frac{x}{\|x\|}\right) \\ &\in \|x\| T(B_X) \\ &\subseteq \|x\| \overline{T(B_X)} \\ &= \|x\| \overline{S} \\ &= \overline{\|x\| S} \\ &\subseteq \overline{\text{span}}(S), \end{aligned}$$

so  $\text{Ran}(T) \subseteq \overline{\text{span}}(S)$ , meaning  $\overline{\text{Ran}}(T) \subseteq \overline{\text{span}}(S)$ . Thus,  $S$  is total in  $\overline{\text{Ran}}(T)$ , so  $\text{Ran}(T)$  is separable. □

**Exercise:** If  $T : X \rightarrow Y$  is a compact operator between normed spaces, and  $E \subseteq X$  is a subspace, then  $T|_E : E \rightarrow Y$  is also compact.

**Solution:** Since  $E \subseteq X$  is linear, we have  $B_E \subseteq B_X$ , so  $T|_E(B_E) = T(B_E) \subseteq T(B_X)$ , meaning

$$\overline{T|_E(B_E)} \subseteq \overline{T(B_X)}.$$

Since  $\overline{T(B_X)}$  is compact, so too is  $\overline{T|_E(B_E)}$ .

**Proposition:** Let  $X$  and  $Y$  be Banach spaces, and let  $T : X \rightarrow Y$  be compact. Then,  $T^* : Y^* \rightarrow X^*$  is also compact.

*Proof.* We only need show that  $T^*(B_{Y^*})$  is totally bounded.

Let  $\varepsilon > 0$ . We know that  $T(B_X)$  is totally bounded in  $Y$ , so there are  $x_1, \dots, x_n$  such that

$$T(B_X) \subseteq \bigcup_{i=1}^n U(x_i, \varepsilon/3).$$

---

<sup>xviii</sup>Linear span is dense.

Consider the finite rank operator  $F : Y^* \rightarrow \ell_\infty^n$  defined by

$$\begin{aligned} F(\varphi) &= (\varphi(T(x_i)))_{i=1}^n \\ &= (T^*(\varphi)(x_i))_{i=1}^n. \end{aligned}$$

We have  $F$  is bounded (as it is a composition of bounded linear maps), so  $F$  is compact, meaning  $F(B_{Y^*})$  is totally bounded in  $\ell_\infty^n$ . Thus, there are functionals  $\varphi_1, \dots, \varphi_m$  such that

$$F(B_{Y^*}) \subseteq \bigcup_{i=1}^n U(\varphi_i, \varepsilon/3).$$

Given  $\psi \in B_{Y^*}$  and  $x \in B_X$ , we select  $i$  and  $j$  such that

$$\begin{aligned} \|T(x) - T(x_i)\| &< \varepsilon/3 \\ \|F(\psi) - F(\varphi_j)\|_\infty &< \varepsilon/3. \end{aligned}$$

Thus, we have

$$\begin{aligned} \|T^*(\psi)(x) - T^*(\varphi_j)(x)\| &\leq \|T^*(\psi)(x) - T^*(\psi)(x_i)\| + \|T^*(\psi)(x_i) - T^*(\varphi_j)(x_i)\| + \|T^*(\varphi_j)(x_i) - T^*(\varphi_j)(x)\| \\ &\leq \|\psi(T(x) - T(x_i))\| + \|F(\psi) - F(\varphi_j)\| + \|\varphi_j(T(x_i) - T(x))\| \\ &< \varepsilon. \end{aligned}$$

Since  $x \in B_X$  was arbitrary, we have  $\|T^*(\psi) - T^*(\varphi_j)\|_{\text{op}} \leq \varepsilon$ , and since  $\psi \in B_{Y^*}$  was arbitrary, we also have

$$T^*(B_{Y^*}) \subseteq \bigcup_{i=1}^n U(\varphi_i, \varepsilon).$$

□

**Exercise:** Let  $X$  and  $Y$  be Banach spaces, and suppose  $T : X \rightarrow Y$  is compact.

- (1) If  $T$  is surjective, show that  $\dim(Y) < \infty$ .
- (2) If  $T$  has closed range, then  $T$  is finite-rank.
- (3) If  $X = Y$  and  $T$  is idempotent, then  $T$  is finite-rank.
- (4) If  $X$  is infinite-dimensional and  $T$  is injective, then  $\text{Ran}(T)$  is not closed.
- (5) If  $X$  is infinite-dimensional, then  $T$  cannot be isometric.

**Solution:**

- (1) Let  $T$  be surjective. Then, by the Open Mapping Theorem,  $T$  is a quotient map, so there exists  $\delta > 0$  such that  $B_Y \subseteq T\left(\frac{1}{\delta}B_X\right)$ .

Let  $(y_n)_n$  be a sequence in  $B_Y$ . Since  $T$  is surjective, there exists  $(x_n)_n$  such that  $(T(x_n))_n = (y_n)_n$ .  $B_Y \subseteq T\left(\frac{1}{\delta}B_X\right)$ , we must have  $(x_n)_n \subseteq \frac{1}{\delta}B_X$ , so  $(x_n)_n$  is bounded. Hence,  $y_n = (T(x_n))_n$  has a convergent subsequence as  $T$  is compact. Thus,  $B_Y$  is compact, hence  $\dim(Y) < \infty$ .

- (2) Let  $Z = T(X)$ . Then,  $Z \subseteq Y$  is a Banach space as  $Z$  is closed and  $Y$  is a Banach space. Therefore,  $T : X \rightarrow Z$  is surjective, hence an open map, meaning that  $Z$  is finite-dimensional by (1).
- (3) Let  $T$  be idempotent. Then, we have  $X = \ker(T) \oplus \text{Ran}(T)$ , and  $\text{Ran}(T)$  is closed, meaning that by (2),  $\text{Ran}(T)$  is finite-dimensional.
- (4) Let  $T$  be injective. Then,  $\ker(T) = \{0\}$ , and since  $X = X/\ker(T) \cong \text{Ran}(T)$  by the First Isomorphism Theorem,  $\text{Ran}(T)$  is infinite-dimensional, implying that  $T$  is not finite rank. Thus,  $\text{Ran}(T)$  is not closed by the contrapositive of (2).
- (5) Let  $T$  be isometric. Then,  $T^* : Y^* \rightarrow X^*$  is a 1-quotient map, hence surjective. Since  $T^*$  is compact, it must be the case that  $\dim(X^*) < \infty$ , so  $X$  is also finite-dimensional.

Compact operators have special properties related to their eigenspaces, including (but not limited to) the fact that the eigenspaces corresponding to nonzero eigenvalues are finite-dimensional and invariant.

**Proposition:** Let  $X$  be a Banach space,  $T : X \rightarrow Y$  be a compact operator, and  $0 \neq \lambda \in \mathbb{F}$ .

- (1) The eigenspace

$$E_\lambda(T) = \ker(T - \lambda I)$$

is  $T$ -invariant and finite-dimensional.

- (2) The range  $\text{Ran}(T - \lambda I)$  is closed.  
 (3) The cokernel  $\text{coker}(T - \lambda I)$  is finite-dimensional.  
 (4) The operator  $T - \lambda I$  is Fredholm.

*Proof.*

- (1) We know that  $E_\lambda$  is  $T$ -invariant by the properties of eigenspaces, and since  $E_\lambda$  is the kernel of a continuous operator, it is evident that it is closed.

Let  $T|_{E_\lambda} : E_\lambda \rightarrow E_\lambda$  be the restriction of  $T$  to the invariant subspace. Then,  $S$  is compact (as  $T$  is compact), and by the definition of the eigenspace,  $S = \lambda \text{id}_{E_\lambda}$ . Thus,

$$\begin{aligned} \overline{S(B_{E_\lambda})} &= \overline{\lambda B_{E_\lambda}} \\ &= \lambda \overline{B_{E_\lambda}} \\ &= \lambda B_{E_\lambda}, \end{aligned}$$

is compact. Since  $\lambda \neq 0$ ,  $B_{E_\lambda}$  is compact, so  $\dim(E_\lambda) < \infty$ .

- (2) Since  $E_\lambda(T)$  is finite-dimensional, there is a closed subspace  $F \subseteq X$  with  $X = E_\lambda(T) \oplus F$ .

Let  $S = (T - \lambda I)|_F : F \rightarrow X$  be the restriction. Then,  $\text{Ran}(T - \lambda I) = \text{Ran}(S)$ , and  $S$  is injective. We will show that  $S$  is bounded below.

Suppose there is a sequence of unit vectors  $(f_n)_n$  with  $(\|S(f_n)\|)_n \rightarrow 0$ . Since  $T$  is compact, we may assume  $(T(f_n))_n \rightarrow z$  for some  $z \in X$ . Thus,  $(f_n)_n \rightarrow \lambda^{-1}z$ ; since  $\|z\| = \lambda \neq 0$ , and  $F$  is closed,  $z \in F$ . Thus,  $(T(f_n))_n \rightarrow \lambda^{-1}T(z)$ , so  $T(z) = \lambda z$ , or  $S(z) = 0$ .

- (3) Since  $\text{Ran}(T - \lambda I)$  is closed, we find

$$\begin{aligned} \text{coker}((T - \lambda I)^*) &= (X/\text{Ran}(T - \lambda I))^* \\ &\cong (\text{Ran}(T - \lambda I))^\perp \\ &= \ker(T^* - \lambda I). \end{aligned}$$

Since  $T$  is compact,  $T^*$  is also compact, meaning  $\ker(T^* - \lambda I)$  is finite-dimensional, hence  $\text{coker}(T - \lambda I)$  is finite dimensional.

- (4) This follows from both  $\ker(T - \lambda I)$  and  $\text{coker}(T - \lambda I)$  being finite-dimensional.

□

**Corollary:** If  $X$  is a Banach space, and  $P \in \mathcal{K}(X)$  is idempotent, then  $P$  is finite-rank.

*Proof.* Note that  $E_1(P) = \text{Ran}(P)$ , so by the previous proposition,  $P$  is finite-rank.

□

**Theorem** (Algebraic Properties of the Space of Compact Operators): Let  $X, Y, Z$  be Banach spaces.

- (1)  $\mathbb{K}(X, Y) \subseteq \mathcal{B}(X, Y)$  is a closed linear subspace.
- (2) If  $S \in \mathcal{B}(Y, Z)$  and  $T \in \mathbb{K}(X, Y)$ , then  $S \circ T \in \mathbb{K}(X, Z)$ . Additionally, if  $R \in \mathcal{B}(Z, X)$ , then  $T \circ R \in \mathbb{K}(Z, Y)$ .
- (3)  $\mathbb{K}(X) \subseteq \mathcal{B}(X)$  is a closed ideal.
- (4)  $I_X \in \mathbb{K}(X)$  if and only if  $\dim(X) < \infty$ , in which case  $\mathbb{K}(X) = \mathcal{B}(X)$ .

*Proof.*

- (1) Let  $T, S \in \mathbb{K}(X, Y)$  and  $\alpha \in \mathbb{C}$ . Let  $(x_n)_n$  be a bounded sequence in  $X$ . Since  $T$  is compact, there exists a subsequence such that  $(T(x_{n_k}))_k$  converges in  $Y$ . Since  $S$  is convergent, there exists a subsequence such that  $(S(x_{n_{k_j}}))_j$  converges in  $Y$ . Thus,  $(S + \alpha T)(x_{n_{k_j}})_j$  converges in  $Y$ , so  $S + \alpha T$  is compact.

Let  $(\|T_n - T\|_{\text{op}})_n \rightarrow 0$ , where  $(T_n)_n$  is a sequence in  $\mathbb{K}(X, Y)$ . We will show that  $T(B_X)$  is totally bounded.

Let  $\varepsilon > 0$ . There is  $N$  such that  $\|T_N - T\| < \varepsilon$ , and since  $T_N(B_X)$  is totally bounded, there exist  $y_1, \dots, y_m$  such that  $T_N(B_X) \subseteq \bigcup_{j=1}^m \mathcal{U}(y_j, \varepsilon/2)$ .

For  $x \in B_X$ , we can find  $j$  such that  $\|T_N(x) - y_j\| < \varepsilon/2$ , meaning

$$\begin{aligned} \|T(x) - y_j\| &\leq \|T(x) - T_N(x)\| + \|T_N(x) - y_j\| \\ &\leq \|T - T_N\| \|x\| + \frac{\varepsilon}{2} \\ &< \varepsilon, \end{aligned}$$

meaning  $T(B_X) \subseteq \bigcup_{j=1}^m \mathcal{U}(y_j, \varepsilon)$ , so  $T(B_X)$  is totally bounded, meaning  $T$  is compact.

- (2) Let  $(x_n)_n$  be bounded in  $X$ . Then, there exists a subsequence such that  $(T(x_{n_k}))_k \rightarrow y$  in  $Y$ . Since  $S$  is continuous,  $(S(T(x_{n_k})))_k \rightarrow S(y)$  in  $Z$ , so  $S \circ T \in \mathbb{K}(X, Z)$ .

Since  $R(B_Z) \subseteq \|R\|_{\text{op}} B_X$ , we have

$$\begin{aligned} T \circ R(B_Z) &\subseteq T(\|R\|_{\text{op}} B_X) \\ &= \|R\|_{\text{op}} T(B_X) \\ &\subseteq \|R\|_{\text{op}} \overline{T(B_X)}. \end{aligned}$$

Since  $T$  is compact,  $\overline{T(B_X)}$  is compact, meaning  $\overline{T \circ R(B_Z)}$  is compact, so  $T \circ R \in \mathbb{K}(Z, Y)$ .

- (3) This fact follows from (1) and (2).
- (4) We have  $X$  is finite-dimensional if and only if  $B_X$  is compact if and only if  $I(B_X)$  is compact, if and only if  $I$  is compact. Since any ideal that contains the multiplicative identity is the whole algebra, we know  $\mathbb{K}(X) = \mathcal{B}(X)$ .

□

**Remark:** Since the compact operators form a closed subspace and every bounded finite-rank operator is compact, we have

$$\overline{\mathbb{F}(X)}^{\|\cdot\|_{\text{op}}} \subseteq \mathbb{K}(X),$$

where  $X$  is a Banach space. This inclusion is sometimes strict. Banach spaces for which  $\overline{\mathbb{F}(X)}^{\|\cdot\|_{\text{op}}} = \mathbb{K}(X)$  are said to have the approximation property.

Hilbert spaces have the approximation property.

## Locally Convex Topological Vector Spaces

Now that we have a proper understanding of normed vector spaces and operators on them, we can investigate further into a more general structure that normed vector spaces fall into — topological vector spaces.

### Topological Vector Spaces

**Definition.** Let  $X$  be a vector space over  $\mathbb{F}$ , and let  $\tau$  be a topology on  $X$ . We say  $\tau$  is compatible with the vector space structure of  $X$  if

- (1) for every  $x \in X$ ,  $\{x\}$  is closed;
- (2) scalar multiplication:

$$\begin{aligned} m : \mathbb{F} \times X &\rightarrow X \\ m(\lambda, x) &= \lambda x \end{aligned}$$

is continuous (where  $\mathbb{F} \times X$  is endowed with the product topology);

- (3) vector addition

$$\begin{aligned} a : X \times X &\rightarrow X \\ a(x, y) &= x + y \end{aligned}$$

is continuous (where  $X \times X$  is endowed with the product topology).

A topological vector space is a pair  $(X, \tau)$  where  $X$  is a vector space and  $\tau$  is a topology on  $X$  that is compatible with the vector space structure of  $X$ .

**Remark:** Since the topologies we are dealing with are not necessarily first countable,<sup>xxx</sup> we have to use nets instead of sequences to understand ideas such as convergence.

**Proposition:** Let  $X$  be a topological vector space, and fix  $x_0 \in X$ ,  $\alpha \neq 0$ . Then,

- (1)  $T_{x_0} : X \rightarrow X$  defined by  $T_{x_0}(x) = x + x_0$  is a homeomorphism;
- (2)  $m_\alpha : X \rightarrow X$  defined by  $m_\alpha(x) = \alpha x$  is a homeomorphism.

**Corollary:** Let  $X$  be a TVS, with  $U \subseteq X$  open,  $C \subseteq X$  closed, and  $K \subseteq X$  compact. Let  $x_0 \in X$  and  $\alpha \neq 0$ .

Then,  $x_0 + U$  and  $\alpha U$  are open,  $x_0 + C$  and  $\alpha C$  are closed, and  $x_0 + K$  and  $\alpha K$  are compact.

To show that the topology on a topological vector space is Hausdorff, we begin by showing a useful fact.

**Lemma:** Let  $X$  be a topological vector space. Suppose  $V \subseteq X$  is a neighborhood of  $0_X$ . There is a symmetric<sup>xx</sup> open neighborhood of  $0_X$  such that  $W + W \subseteq V$ .

*Proof.* We assume  $V$  is open. Since  $a : X \times X \rightarrow X$  is continuous, the preimage  $a^{-1}(V) \subseteq X \times X$  is an open neighborhood of  $(0_X, 0_X)$  in the product topology of  $X \times X$ , meaning there are neighborhoods  $W_1 \times W_2$  of  $(0_X, 0_X)$  with  $W_1, W_2$  open. Note that  $W_1 + W_2 \subseteq V$ . If  $W_3 = W_1 \cap W_2$ , then  $W_3$  is an open neighborhood of  $0_X$  with  $W_3 + W_3 \subseteq V$ . Setting  $W = W_3 \cap (-W_3)$ , we have  $W$  is symmetric with  $W + W \subseteq V$ .  $\square$

**Proposition:** If  $(X, \tau)$  is a topological vector space, then  $\tau$  is Hausdorff.

<sup>xxx</sup>Every point has a countable neighborhood system on it.

<sup>xx</sup>A subset  $W$  of  $X$  such that  $W = -W$ .



*Proof.* Let  $x, y \in X$  with  $x \neq y$ . Since  $\{y\}$  is closed, there is  $U \subseteq X$  with  $x \in U \subseteq \{y\}^c$ . Translating  $V = U - X$ ,  $V$  is thus an open neighborhood of  $0_X$ . There is then a symmetric open neighborhood  $W$  with  $W + W \subseteq V$ .

We have  $x + W$  and  $y + W$  are open neighborhoods of  $x$  and  $y$  respectively. We claim  $(x + W) \cap (y + W) = \emptyset$ .

Suppose toward contradiction that this is not the case. Then, there is some  $w, w' \in W$  such that  $x + w = y + w'$ . Thus,

$$\begin{aligned} y &= x + w - w' \\ &\in x + W + (-W) \\ &= x + W + W \\ &\subseteq x + V \\ &= x + (U - X) \\ &= U, \end{aligned}$$

meaning  $y \in \{y\}^c$ , which is a contradiction.

Thus,  $\tau$  is Hausdorff. □

We can now look at subspaces and quotient spaces of topological vector spaces.

**Proposition:** Let  $X$  be a topological vector space, and let  $E \subseteq X$  be a linear subspace.

- (1)  $E$  is a topological vector space under the subspace topology.
- (2)  $\bar{E}$  is also a subspace.
- (3) Assuming  $E$  is closed,  $X/E$  endowed with the quotient topology is a topological vector space, and  $\pi : X \rightarrow X/E$  is an open map.

*Proof.*

- (1) Since every element of  $E$  is an element of  $X$ , we must have  $\{x\}$  closed in  $E$  as  $\{x\}$  is closed in  $X$ . Similarly, since scalar multiplication is continuous in  $X$ , and  $E$  is a subspace, scalar multiplication is closed in  $X$ , and similarly is vector addition.
- (2) We know that the subspace topology on  $E$  is compatible with the vector space structure of  $E$ . Let  $(x_\alpha)_\alpha \rightarrow x$  and  $(y_\alpha)_\alpha \rightarrow y$  be nets in  $E$ , and let  $\lambda \in \mathbb{F}$ . Then,

$$(x_\alpha + \lambda y_\alpha)_\alpha \rightarrow x + \lambda y,$$

so  $\bar{E}$  is also a subspace.

- (3) We will show that  $\pi$  is an open map. If  $U \subseteq X$  is open, then

$$\begin{aligned} \pi^{-1}(\pi(U)) &= U + E \\ &= \bigcup_{x \in E} x + U, \end{aligned}$$

meaning  $\pi^{-1}(\pi(U))$  is open, so  $\pi(U)$  is open by the definition of the quotient topology.

We need to show that the quotient topology is compatible with the vector space structure.

Let  $x + E \neq y + E$  in  $X/E$ . Then,  $(x - y) \notin E$ , so there exists  $U$  with  $x - y \in U \subseteq E^c$ . Then,  $y \in x + U$  and  $x + U$  is open, meaning

$$y + E = \pi(y)$$

$$\begin{aligned} &\in \pi(x + U) \\ &\subseteq X/E. \end{aligned}$$

Since  $\pi$  is open,  $x + U$  is open. We claim that  $x + E \notin x + U$ .

If  $x + E = \pi(x + u) = x + u + E$ , then  $u \in E$ , which is a contradiction as  $U \subseteq E^c$ . Thus  $\{x + E\}^c$  is open, so  $X/E$  is a T1 topology.

Let  $\alpha : X \times X \rightarrow X$  and  $\bar{\alpha} : X/E \times X/E \rightarrow X/E$  denote the addition maps. The following diagram commutes.

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} X \times X & \xrightarrow{\pi \times \pi} & X/E \times X/E & \xrightarrow{\bar{\alpha}} & X/E \\ & \searrow \alpha & & \nearrow \pi & \\ & & X & & \end{array}$$

We can see that for open  $V \subseteq X/E$ ,  $(\bar{\alpha})^{-1}(V) = (\pi \times \pi)(\alpha^{-1}(\pi^{-1}(V)))$ , which is open as  $\pi$  is open and  $\alpha$  is continuous.

Similarly, we can see that  $\bar{m} : F \times X/E \rightarrow X/E$  is continuous.

□

**Proposition:** Let  $(X, \tau)$  be a topological vector space. Then, the collection of all closed subspaces,

$$\mathcal{M} = \{M \mid M \subseteq X \text{ closed subspace}\}$$

is a lattice ordered by inclusion.

*Proof.* If  $M, N \subseteq X$ , then

$$M \wedge N = M \cap N$$

is the largest closed subspace contained in both  $M$  and  $N$ , while

$$M \vee N = \overline{M + N}^\tau$$

is the smallest closed subspace containing both  $M$  and  $N$ .

□

**Definition.** Let  $(X, \tau)$  be a topological vector space. A local base for  $X$  is a neighborhood base of  $0_X$ . The family  $\mathcal{O}_0 \subseteq \tau$  is defined such that

- $0_X \in V$  for all  $V \in \mathcal{O}_0$
- $\mathcal{O}_0$  is directed by reverse inclusion — that is, if  $U \in \tau$  with  $0_X \in U$ , then there exists  $B \in \mathcal{O}_0$  with  $B \subseteq U$ .

Note that for any  $x \in X$ , we can find a neighborhood base for  $x$  by taking  $x + B$  for all  $B \in \mathcal{O}_0$ .

**Definition.** A map  $T : X \rightarrow Y$  between topological vector spaces is uniformly continuous if, for all  $V \in \mathcal{O}_{0_Y}$ , there exists  $U \in \mathcal{O}_{0_X}$  such that if  $x_1, x_2 \in X$  with  $x_1 - x_2 \in U$ , then  $T(x_1) - T(x_2) \in V$ .

**Proposition:** Let  $X$  and  $Y$  be topological vector spaces, and let  $T : X \rightarrow Y$  be linear. Then, the following are equivalent.

- (1)  $T$  is continuous at  $0_X$ ;
- (2)  $T$  is continuous;

(3)  $T$  is uniformly continuous.

*Proof.* To see (i) implies (ii), we let  $(x_\alpha)_\alpha \rightarrow x$  be a net convergent in  $X$ , so  $(x_\alpha - x)_\alpha \rightarrow 0_X$  by continuity of addition. Since  $T$  is continuous at the origin,  $(T(x_\alpha - x))_\alpha \rightarrow T(0_X) = 0_Y$ . Since  $T$  is linear, we have  $(T(x_\alpha) - T(x))_\alpha \rightarrow 0_Y$ , and since addition is continuous, we have  $(T(x_\alpha))_\alpha \rightarrow T(x)$ .

It is clear that (ii) implies (i).

To see that (iii) implies (i), we let  $V \in \mathcal{O}_{0_Y}$ , meaning there exists  $U \in \mathcal{O}_{0_X}$  such that  $x_1 - x_2 \in U$  implies  $T(x_1) - T(x_2) \in V$ . Taking  $x_2 = 0$ , we have  $T(U) \subseteq V$ .

To see that (i) implies (iii), let  $V \in \mathcal{O}_{0_Y}$ . By continuity, there is  $U \in \mathcal{O}_{0_X}$  such that  $T(U) \subseteq V$ . If  $x_1, x_2 \in X$  with  $x_1 - x_2 \in U$ , then  $T(x_1 - x_2) \in V$ . Since  $T$  is linear, we have  $T(x_1) - T(x_2) \in V$ .  $\square$

**Definition.** We say that two topological vector spaces  $X$  and  $Y$  are isomorphic if there is a linear isomorphism  $T : X \rightarrow Y$  that is a homeomorphism. We write  $X \cong Y$  as topological vector spaces.

**Definition.** A subset of a vector space  $A \subseteq X$  is said to be balanced if, for every  $\alpha \in \mathbb{F}$  with  $|\alpha| \leq 1$ , we have  $\alpha A \subseteq A$ .

**Lemma:** Let  $X$  be a topological vector space, and suppose  $U$  is a neighborhood of the origin  $0_X$ . Then, there exists a balanced open set  $W_U$  with  $0 \in W_U \subseteq U$ .

*Proof.* Since  $m : \mathbb{F} \times X \rightarrow X$  is continuous,  $m^{-1}(U)$  is an open neighborhood of  $(0, 0_X)$  in the product topology. There must exist  $V \in \mathcal{O}_{0_X}$  and  $\delta > 0$  such that  $(-\delta, \delta) \times V \subseteq m^{-1}(U)$ . We have  $m((-\delta, \delta) \times V) \subseteq U$ , so  $\alpha V \subseteq U$  whenever  $|\alpha| < \delta$ . Thus, we have

$$W_U = \bigcup_{|\alpha| < \delta} \alpha V$$

is the set we are looking for.  $\square$

**Proposition:** Every topological vector space admits a local base consisting of balanced sets.

*Proof.* Let  $\mathcal{O}_{0_X}$  be a local base for the topological vector space  $X$ . For each  $U \in \mathcal{O}_{0_X}$ , there is  $W_U \subseteq U$  with  $W_U$  balanced. Thus,  $\{W_U\}_{U \in \mathcal{O}_{0_X}}$  is a local base consisting of balanced sets.  $\square$

**Proposition:** Let  $X$  be a topological vector space of dimension  $n$ . Then,  $X \cong \ell_2^n$  as topological vector spaces.

*Proof.* Let  $\{b_1, \dots, b_n\}$  be a basis for  $X$ , and consider the map  $\varphi : \ell_2^n \rightarrow X$  given by

$$\varphi(\lambda) = \sum_{j=1}^n \lambda(j) b_j,$$

where

$$\lambda = \sum_{j=1}^n \lambda(j) e_j.$$

It is clear that  $\varphi$  is a linear isomorphism. Additionally, we claim that  $\varphi$  is continuous.

If  $(\lambda_k)_k \xrightarrow{k \rightarrow \infty} \lambda$  in  $\ell_2^n$ , then  $\lambda_k(j) \xrightarrow{k \rightarrow \infty} \lambda(j)$  for each  $j$ . Thus,  $\lambda_k(j) b_j \xrightarrow{k \rightarrow \infty} \lambda(j) b_j$  for each  $j$ , since multiplication is continuous. Using the fact that addition is continuous, we get

$$(\varphi(\lambda_k))_k \xrightarrow{k \rightarrow \infty} \sum_{j=1}^n \lambda(j) b_j.$$

To show that the inverse is continuous, we need a compactness argument.

We claim that, for  $B = B_{\ell_2^n}$ ,  $\varphi(B)$  contains an open neighborhood of  $0_X$ .

The unit sphere,  $S = S_{\ell_2^n}$ , is compact since it is closed and bounded, so  $\varphi(S) \subseteq X$  is compact. Note that  $0_X \notin \varphi(S)$  since  $\varphi$  is injective. So, for every  $x \in \varphi(S)$ , we choose  $U_x, V_x$  such that  $U_x \cap V_x = \emptyset$ ,  $0_X \in U_x$ , and  $x \in V_x$ .

Now, we have an open cover

$$\varphi(S) \subseteq \bigcup_{x \in \varphi(S)} V_x,$$

which admits a finite subcover

$$\varphi(S) \subseteq \bigcup_{j=1}^n V_{x_j}.$$

Set

$$U = \bigcap_{j=1}^n U_{x_j},$$

noting that  $U \cap \varphi(S) = \emptyset$ .

There is an open and balanced  $W$  with  $0_X \in W \subseteq U$ . We will show that  $W \subseteq \varphi(B)$ .

Suppose toward contradiction that there is  $w \in W \setminus \varphi(B)$ . Since  $\varphi$  is onto, we can write  $w = \varphi(z)$  for some  $z \in B^c$ . We have

$$\begin{aligned} \varphi\left(\frac{1}{\|z\|}z\right) &= \frac{1}{\|z\|}\varphi(z) \\ &= \frac{1}{\|z\|}w, \end{aligned}$$

which belongs to  $W$  since  $\|z\| > 1$  and  $W$  is balanced. However,  $\frac{1}{\|z\|}z \in S$ , and  $W \cap \varphi(S) = \emptyset$ , which is our contradiction.

If  $V \subseteq \ell_2^n$  is an open neighborhood of the origin  $0_{\ell_2^n}$ , then there is  $\delta > 0$  such that  $\delta B \subseteq V$ . Set  $W' = \delta W$ , which is yet again an open neighborhood of  $0_X$ . We have

$$\begin{aligned} W' &= \delta W \\ &\subseteq \delta \varphi(B) \\ &= \varphi(\delta B) \\ &\subseteq \varphi(V), \end{aligned}$$

implying that  $\varphi^{-1}(W) \subseteq \varphi^{-1}(\varphi(V)) = V$ , so  $\varphi^{-1}$  is continuous at  $0_X$ , hence continuous.  $\square$

**Corollary:** Let  $X$  be a topological vector space with finite dimension, and let  $Y$  be an arbitrary topological vector space. Then, any linear map  $T : X \rightarrow Y$  is continuous.

*Proof.* We have an isomorphism of topological vector spaces  $\varphi : \ell_2^n \rightarrow X$ . Since  $\text{Ran}(T)$  is finite dimensional and inherits the subspace topology on  $Y$ , there is also an isomorphism of topological vector spaces  $\psi : \text{Ran}(T) \rightarrow \ell_2^m$  for some  $m \leq n$ .

We know that  $S = \psi \circ T \circ \varphi$  is continuous since any map between finite-dimensional normed spaces is continuous, so  $T = \psi^{-1} \circ S \circ \varphi^{-1}$  is continuous.  $\square$

We can extend notions of completeness to the case of a TVS using generalized versions of Cauchy sequences.

**Definition.** Let  $X$  be a topological vector spaces.

- (1) A sequence  $(x_n)_n$  in  $X$  is called Cauchy if  $U \in \mathcal{O}_{0_X}$ , there exists  $N$  such that for all  $m, n \geq N$ ,  $x_m - x_n \in U$ .
- (2) A net  $(x_\alpha)_{\alpha \in A}$  is called Cauchy if, for every  $U \in \mathcal{O}_{0_X}$ , there exists  $\gamma \in A$  such that for all  $\alpha, \beta \geq \gamma$ ,  $x_\alpha - x_\beta \in U$ .
- (3) We say  $X$  is complete if every Cauchy net converges in  $X$ .

**Proposition:** A convergent net  $(x_\alpha)_\alpha \rightarrow x$  in a topological vector space is always Cauchy.

*Proof.* Let  $V \in \mathcal{O}_{0_X}$ . We find symmetric  $W \in \mathcal{O}_{0_X}$  with  $W + W \subseteq V$ . Note that  $x + W \in \mathcal{O}_x$ , so for all large  $\alpha$ , we have  $x_\alpha \in x + W$ . If  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  are sufficiently large, we have

$$\begin{aligned} x_\alpha - x_\beta &= (x_\alpha - x) + (x - x_\beta) \\ &\in W + (-W) \\ &= W + W \\ &\subseteq V. \end{aligned}$$

□

**Exercise:** Suppose  $(x_\alpha)_\alpha$  is a Cauchy net in a topological vector space  $X$  that admits a convergent subnet  $(x_{\alpha_\beta})_\beta \rightarrow x$ . Show that  $(x_\alpha)_\alpha \rightarrow x$ .

**Solution:** Let  $V \in \mathcal{O}_{0_X}$ , and  $W \subseteq V$  symmetric such that  $W + W \subseteq V$ . Then, there exists  $\gamma_1$  such that for all  $\beta \geq \gamma_1$ ,  $x_{\alpha_\beta} - x \in W$ . Similarly, there exists  $\gamma_2$  such that for all  $\alpha, \alpha_\beta \geq \gamma_2$ ,  $x_\alpha - x_{\alpha_\beta} \in W$ . Thus, we get  $\gamma$  such that  $\gamma \geq \gamma_1$  and  $\gamma \geq \gamma_2$ . For all  $\alpha, \alpha_\beta \geq \gamma$ , we have

$$\begin{aligned} x_\alpha - x &= (x_\alpha - x_{\alpha_\beta}) + (x_{\alpha_\beta} - x) \\ &\in W + W \\ &\subseteq V. \end{aligned}$$

Thus,  $(x_\alpha)_\alpha \rightarrow x$ .

**Proposition:** If  $X$  is a first countable topological vector space, then  $X$  is complete if and only if every Cauchy sequence converges.

*Proof.* We only need to show sufficiency. Assume that every Cauchy sequence converges. Let  $(x_\alpha)_\alpha$  be a Cauchy net in  $X$ . Since  $X$  is first countable, there is a countable local base  $(V_n)_n$ . Without loss of generality, we may take  $V_1 \supseteq V_2 \supseteq V_3 \supseteq \dots$ . We inductively construct  $(\alpha_n)_n \subseteq A$  with  $\alpha_1 \leq \alpha_2 \leq \alpha_3 \leq \dots$ , with, for  $\alpha, \beta \geq \alpha_n$ ,  $x_\alpha - x_\beta \in V_n$ .

Then,  $(x_{\alpha_n})_n$  is a Cauchy sequence in  $X$ , and thus converges. Therefore,  $(x_\alpha)_\alpha$  converges. □

**Corollary:** If  $X$  is a normed spaces, then  $X$  is complete as a topological vector space if and only if  $X$  is a Banach space.

**Proposition:** Let  $X$  be a topological vector space, and suppose  $E \subseteq X$  is a subspace.

- (1) If  $E$  is complete as a topological vector space, then  $E \subseteq X$  is closed.
- (2) If  $E \subseteq X$  is closed and  $X$  is complete, then  $E$  is complete.

**Proposition:** Let  $X$  and  $Y$  be topological vector spaces, and suppose  $\varphi : X \rightarrow Y$  is an isomorphism of topological vector spaces. Then,  $X$  is complete if and only if  $Y$  is complete.

*Proof.* Let  $(x_\alpha)_\alpha$  be a Cauchy net in  $X$ . Then, for  $V \in \mathcal{O}_{0_Y}$ , for large  $\alpha, \beta$ ,  $x_\alpha - x_\beta \in V$ . We then have  $\varphi(x_\alpha) - \varphi(x_\beta) \in U$  for some  $U \in \mathcal{O}_{0_Y}$ , as  $\varphi$  is an isomorphism (hence linear).

We thus have  $(x_\alpha)_\alpha$  is Cauchy if and only if  $(\varphi(x_\alpha))_\alpha$  (as  $\varphi$  is a homeomorphism) is Cauchy, hence  $X$  is complete if and only if  $Y$  is complete.  $\square$

**Corollary:** Let  $X$  be a topological vector space, and suppose  $E \subseteq X$  is a subspace. If  $\dim(E) < \infty$ , then  $E$  is closed.

*Proof.* Endowing  $E$  with the subspace topology, we see that  $E$  is a finite-dimensional topological vector space, so  $E \cong \ell_2^n$  for some  $n$ . Since  $\ell_2^n$  is a Banach space, it is complete as a topological vector space, meaning  $E$  is complete as a topological vector space, meaning  $E$  is closed.  $\square$

## Local Convexity

Topological vector spaces that arise in functional analysis are generally constructed as weak topologies. These spaces always admit a local base of convex sets.

**Definition.** Let  $X$  be a vector space.

- (1) A subset  $C \subseteq X$  is called convex if, for any elements  $x_1, x_2 \in C$ , and  $t \in [0, 1]$ , we have  $(1 - t)x_1 + tx_2 \in C$ .
- (2) Given a subset  $A \subseteq X$ , the convex hull of  $A$  is defined as

$$\text{conv}(A) = \bigcap \{C \mid A \subseteq C \subseteq X, C \text{ convex}\}.$$

Equivalently,

$$\text{conv}(A) = \left\{ \sum_{j=1}^n t_j x_j \mid n \in \mathbb{N}, t_j \in [0, 1], x_j \in A, \sum_{j=1}^n t_j = 1 \right\}.$$

**Definition.** A topological vector space is called locally convex if it admits a local base of convex sets. Such a space is called a locally convex topological vector space, abbreviated LCTVS.

**Exercise:** Let  $U$  be an open and balanced set in a topological vector space  $X$ . Prove that  $\text{conv}(U)$  is open and balanced.

**Solution:** We will show that the interior of any convex set is convex. Let  $S$  be convex,  $U = S^\circ$ . Since  $tS + (1 - t)S = S$  by convexity, we have  $tU + (1 - t)U \subseteq S$ , so  $tU + (1 - t)U \subseteq S^\circ$ . Since  $S^\circ$  is the smallest open set that contains  $tU + (1 - t)U$ , it is the case that  $tU + (1 - t)U = U$ .

In particular, it must be the case that for any convex  $C$  with  $U \subseteq C \subseteq X$ , we must have  $U \subseteq C^\circ \subseteq X$  with  $C^\circ$  convex. Thus,  $\text{conv}(U)$  is open.

Since  $U$  is balanced, we know that  $\alpha U \subseteq U$  for all  $|\alpha| \leq 1$ . Since  $U \subseteq \text{conv}(U)$ , we have  $\alpha U \subseteq \text{conv}(U)$ , so  $\text{conv}(\alpha U) \subseteq \text{conv} U$ , so  $\alpha \text{conv}(U) \subseteq \text{conv}(U)$ , so  $\text{conv}(U)$  is balanced.

**Proposition:** Every locally convex topological vector space has a local base of balanced convex sets.

*Proof.* Let  $\mathcal{O}_{0_X}$  be a local base for  $X$  consisting of convex sets. We construct the family  $\{W_U\}_{U \in \mathcal{O}_{0_X}}$ , which is a local base consisting of balanced sets with  $W_U \subseteq U$  for each  $U \in \mathcal{O}_{0_X}$ . For each  $U$ , we set  $V_U = \text{conv}(W_U)$ . Since  $V_U \subseteq U$  for each  $U$ , as  $U$  is convex, and  $V_U$  is open, convex, and balanced, we have  $\{V_U\}_{U \in \mathcal{O}_{0_X}}$  as our desired local base.  $\square$

**Proposition (Preservation of Local Convexity):** Let  $X$  be a locally convex topological vector space, and suppose  $E \subseteq X$  is a subspace.

- (1) Equipped with the subspace topology,  $E$  is a locally convex topological vector space.

(2) If  $E$  is closed,  $X/E$  with the quotient topology is a locally convex topological vector space.

*Proof.* We have shown that  $E$  and  $X/E$  are topological vector spaces earlier. We now only need to show that  $E$  and  $X/E$  admit local bases of convex sets. Let  $\mathcal{O}_{0_X}$  be a local base for  $X$  consisting of convex sets.

(1) We can see that  $\{U \cap E\}_{U \in \mathcal{O}_{0_X}}$  is a local base of  $E$  consisting of convex sets.

(2) The projection  $\pi : X \rightarrow X/E$  is an open map, so the family  $\{\pi(U) \mid U \in \mathcal{O}_{0_X}\}$  is a local base for  $X/E$ .

If  $y_1 = \pi(x_1)$  and  $y_2 = \pi(x_2)$  are in  $\pi(U)$  for some  $x_1, x_2 \in U \in \mathcal{O}_{0_X}$ , and  $t \in [0, 1]$ , we have

$$\begin{aligned} (1-t)y_1 + ty_2 &= (1-t)\pi(x_1) + t\pi(x_2) \\ &= \pi((1-t)x_1 + tx_2) \\ &\in \pi(U), \end{aligned}$$

since  $U$  is convex. Thus,  $\{\pi(U) \mid U \in \mathcal{O}_{0_X}\}$ .

□

## Structure of Locally Convex Topological Vector Spaces

So far, we have mostly been discussing the properties of the topologies on locally convex topological vector spaces, but it is valuable to understand just exactly *from where* this topology comes from. In particular, we will construct the topology on a given vector space as an initial topology for a separating family of seminorms.

**Definition.** Let  $X$  be a vector space, and let  $\mathcal{P}$  be a family of seminorms on  $X$ . For each  $x \in X$  and  $p \in \mathcal{P}$ , we consider the maps

$$f_{p,z} : X \rightarrow [0, \infty)$$

defined by  $f_{p,z}(x) = p(x - z)$ .<sup>xxi</sup> We write  $\tau_{\mathcal{P}}$  to be the topology induced by the family

$$\mathcal{F}_{\mathcal{P}} = \{f_{p,z} \mid p \in \mathcal{P}, z \in X\}.$$

Specifically,  $\tau_{\mathcal{P}}$  is the topology induced by the family of open sets

$$\xi = \{f_{p,z}^{-1}(U) \mid p \in \mathcal{P}, z \in X, U \subseteq [0, \infty) \text{ open}\}.$$

**Remark:** Note that  $\tau_{\mathcal{P}}$  is the initial topology induced by the family of semimetrics,  $\mathcal{F}_{\mathcal{P}}$ , not the family of seminorms  $\mathcal{P}$ . The convergence of nets is defined by  $(x_{\alpha})_{\alpha} \rightarrow x$  if and only if  $(f_{p,z}(x_{\alpha}))_{\alpha} \rightarrow f_{p,z}(x)$  for all  $p \in \mathcal{P}$  and  $z \in X$ .

Equivalently,  $(x_{\alpha})_{\alpha} \rightarrow x$  if and only if  $(p(x_{\alpha} - z))_{\alpha} \rightarrow p(x - z)$  for all  $p \in \mathcal{P}$  and  $z \in X$ .

**Definition (Separating Family).** A family of seminorms  $\mathcal{P}$  on a vector space  $X$  is called separating if, for all nonzero  $x \in X$ , there is  $p \in \mathcal{P}$  such that  $p(x) \neq 0$ .

Note that, by this definition,  $\mathcal{F}_{\mathcal{P}}$  separates the points of  $X$ , as for  $x \neq x'$ , there is  $p \in \mathcal{P}$  with  $p(x - x') \neq 0$ , so  $f_{p,x'}(x) \neq f_{p,x'}(x')$ .

We will start by showing that the topology  $\tau_{\mathcal{P}}$  on  $X$  admits a local base of balanced, convex sets.

**Theorem:** Let  $X, \mathcal{P}, \mathcal{F}_{\mathcal{P}}$ , and  $\tau_{\mathcal{P}}$  be defined as above.

(1) Given  $p \in \mathcal{P}, z \in X$ , and  $\varepsilon > 0$ , the set

$$U_p(z, \varepsilon) = \{x \in X \mid p(x - z) < \varepsilon\}$$

is a convex open neighborhood of  $z$ . Additionally,  $U_p(z, \varepsilon)$  is balanced.

---

<sup>xxi</sup>This is effectively equivalent to defining  $f_{p,z}$  as a semimetric induced by  $p$  in relation to a fixed  $z$ .

- (2) The convergence of a net  $(x_\alpha)_\alpha \rightarrow x$  holds if and only if  $p(x_\alpha - x) \rightarrow 0$  for all  $p \in \mathcal{P}$ .
- (3) If  $\mathcal{P}$  is a separating family, then  $(X, \tau_{\mathcal{P}})$  is a locally convex topological vector space. A neighborhood base at  $z \in X$  is given by

$$\mathcal{O}_z = \left\{ \bigcap_{j=1}^n U_{p_j}(z, \varepsilon) \mid p_1, \dots, p_n \in \mathcal{P}, \varepsilon > 0 \right\}.$$

*Proof.*

- (1) Since  $[0, \varepsilon) \subseteq [0, \infty)$  is open, and  $f_{p,z}$  is continuous, we have  $U_p(z, \varepsilon) = f_{p,z}^{-1}([0, \varepsilon))$  is open. We also know  $z \in U_p(z, \varepsilon)$ .

For  $x_1, x_2 \in U_p(z, \varepsilon)$  and  $t \in [0, 1]$ , we have

$$\begin{aligned} p((1-t)x_1 + tx_2 - z) &= p((1-t)x_1 - (1-t)z + tx_2 - tz) \\ &\leq p((1-t)(x_1 - z)) + p(t(x_2 - z)) \\ &= (1-t)p(x_1 - z) + tp(x_2 - z) \\ &< (1-t)\varepsilon + t\varepsilon \\ &= \varepsilon, \end{aligned}$$

meaning  $U_p(z, \varepsilon)$  is convex.

If  $x \in U_p(0, \varepsilon)$ , then for  $\alpha \in \mathbb{F}$  with  $|\alpha| \leq 1$ , we have  $p(\alpha x) = |\alpha|p(x) \leq p(x) < \varepsilon$ , so  $\alpha x \in U_p(0, \varepsilon)$ .

- (2) Taking  $z = x$  in the net convergence criterion that  $(x_\alpha)_\alpha \rightarrow x$  if and only if  $(p(x_\alpha - z))_\alpha \rightarrow p(x - z)$  for all  $p \in \mathcal{P}$  and  $z \in X$  gives one direction.

In the reverse direction, let  $z \in X$ . Then, by the reverse triangle inequality, since  $p(x_\alpha - x) = p(x_\alpha - z + z - x)$ , we have

$$|p(x_\alpha - z) + p(x - z)| \leq p(x_\alpha - x).$$

Since, by assumption  $p(x_\alpha - x) \rightarrow 0$ , we must have  $p(x_\alpha - z) \rightarrow p(x - z)$ , meaning  $(x_\alpha)_\alpha \rightarrow x$  by the net convergence criterion.

- (3) Since  $\mathcal{P}$  is a separating family,  $\mathcal{F}_{\mathcal{P}}$  separates the points of  $X$ , so  $\tau_{\mathcal{P}}$  is Hausdorff.

We must now show that  $\tau_{\mathcal{P}}$  is compatible with the vector space structure.

- (i) Let  $(x_\alpha)_\alpha \rightarrow x$  and  $(y_\alpha)_\alpha \rightarrow y$ . Then, for arbitrary  $p \in \mathcal{P}$ , we have

$$\begin{aligned} 0 &\leq p((x_\alpha + y_\alpha) - (x + y)) \\ &\leq p(x_\alpha - x) + p(y_\alpha - y) \\ &\rightarrow 0, \end{aligned}$$

meaning  $(x_\alpha + y_\alpha) \rightarrow (x + y)$ .

□